OWNER'S MANUAL

OPEL COMBO



OPEL

INTRODUCTION..... 5 1
GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE.....9 2
DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL.....93 3
INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM 123 4
STARTING & OPERATING..... 142 5
ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS (ADAS).....177 6
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY 225 7
MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE 249 8
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS..... 285 9
CUSTOMER INFORMATION 310 10
APPENDIX.....325 11
INDEX.....335 12

CONTENTS

Introduction.....**5**
Introduction..... 5
Link to Company App and Website 5
How To Use This Manual 5
Propulsion types 7
Vehicle Modifications / Alterations..... 7
Getting to know your vehicle..... **9**
Keys..... 9
Vehicle Security System..... 14
Doors 18
Windows 25
Mirrors 28
Head Restraints 34
Seats 35
Seat Belts..... 43
Airbags System 45
Child restraints 50
Steering Wheel 56
Ignition Switch 57
Wipers and Washers..... 57
Exterior lights 62
Interior Lighting..... 68
Sunroof 69
Interior Features 70
Load compartment 77
Smart Compact Van Features..... 86
Dashboard Instruments And Control.....**93**
Instrument Cluster 98
Warning lights, gauges and indicators 103
Climate controls 115
Infotainment System **123**
Introduction about Infotainment System..... 123
Radio 126
Multimedia Pro Type 1 128
Multimedia Type 2 139
Smartphone Station 140
Starting & Operating..... **142**
Starting And Stopping The Engine 142
Brakes 147
Transmission..... 151
Driving Modes 156
Engine exhaust 156
Fuel 157
Charging (BEV)..... 158
Vehicle Loading 172
Trailer Towing 174
Driving Tips 175
Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS).. **177**
Introduction To Assistance Systems..... 177
Speed Control Assistance System..... 180
Collision Avoidance Assistance System..... 192
Vehicle Stability Assistance System..... 196
Braking Performance Assistance System..... 199
Visibility Enhancement Assistance Systems..... 199
Lane Assistance Systems..... 201
Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System.... 207
Driver's Attention Assistance System 215
Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System.... 218
Utility Assistance Features..... 220
In Case Of Emergency **225**
Hazard Warning Lights 225
Assist And SOS 225
Warning triangle 228
Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 229
Tire Repair Kit 235
Jump starting 239
Refuelling In Emergency 243
Towing 245

Maintenance And Vehicle Care **249**
Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care 249
Scheduled Servicing 250
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts 252
Engine Compartment 255
Vehicle Maintenance 263
Fuses 268
Bulb Replacement 268
Tires and Wheels 275
Vehicle Storage 279
Bodywork-Exterior Care 280
Interior Care 281
Technical Specifications **285**
Vehicle identification 285
Vehicle data 286
Fluids and lubricants 304
Fluid Capacities 306
Wheels and Tires 307
Customer information **310**
Declaration of conformity 310
Fuel Consumption And CO Emissions 313
Disposal Prescriptions 314
REACH 314
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 314
Appendix **325**
Child Restraint Installation Locations 325

INTRODUCTION

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.
This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.
Additionally, video tutorials for some vehicle functions can be viewed in the Info Display.
Some functions are only operational when ignition is switched on, when combustion engine is running or when electric engine is ready.
Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.
You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.
Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner manual I refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Opel Service Partner.
The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Vehicle specific data

Refer to the sections "Service and maintenance", "Technical data", the vehicle's identification plate and national registration documents.

Link to Company App and Website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:

GET IT ON Google Play

Download on the App Store

How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labeling are written in bold letters.

Symbols Keys



Note



Environmental protection feature



Location of equipment/button

This key allows you to identify the special features of your vehicle:



Van



Crew cab



5 seats



7 seats



Smart Compact Van

This key allows you to identify the special features of your vehicle: Page references are indicated with ⇨.
⇨ means "see page".

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

Safety Messages

⚠ DANGER

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury.

Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ WARNING

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury.

Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle.

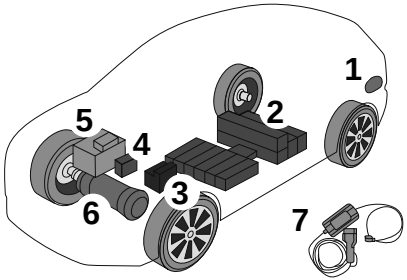
Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Propulsion types

Internal combustion engine vehicle (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine - diesel or petrol - only.

Battery electric vehicle (BEV)



1 Charging connectors

2 Traction battery

3 Accessory battery

4 Heat pump

5 On-board charger

6 Electric motor

7 Charging cable

The charging connectors **(1)** enable three types of charging:

- Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **(7)**
- Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**)
- Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger

The 400 V traction battery **(2)** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning light on the instrument panel.

The 12V accessory battery **(3)** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.

The heat pump **(4)** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling.

The on-board charger **(5)** manages the domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12V accessory battery.

The electric motor **(6)** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Vehicle Modifications / Alterations

The Manufacturer recommends the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type.
The Manufacturer cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products, even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval. Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the

Manufacturer warranty. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel or electric power consumption, CO_2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

⚠ CAUTION

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Radio Remote Control Function



Locking the vehicle

Remote lighting of the lights

Locking/unlocking the loading area

Unlocking the vehicle

Depending on the version, the radio remote control enables a operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⇨ 10
- anti-theft locking system ⇨ 14
- anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 15
- tailgate unlocking ⇨ 22
- power windows ⇨ 26
- mirrors folding ⇨ 29
- vehicle locator lighting ⇨ 68

The remote control has a range of up to several meters, but may also be much less due to external influences.
The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

ⓘ NOTE

The electronic components inside the key fob may be damaged if the key fob is subjected to strong shocks.

In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key fob, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Electronic Key System

⚠ WARNING

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker.
Keep the electronic key away from the breast.

Depending on the version, the electronic key system enables a key-less operation of the following functions:

- central locking system
- tailgate unlocking
- ignition switching on and starting the engine
- headlight activation

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.
Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

ⓘ NOTE

To save battery power, the key-less functions are set to stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To reactivate the functions, press a button on the electronic key.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Emergency key**, refer to the corresponding section.

Key with Foldaway Key Section

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.



Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Central Locking System

Unlocks/locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.
A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

ⓘ NOTE

In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

NOTE

A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Selective Unlocking / Locking

Unlocking

Press to unlock

Unlocking mode can be set in the Infotainment Display:

- All the doors and the load compartment unlock.
- Passenger door unlock.

Unlocking the load compartment

Press twice to unlock the load compartment only (sliding doors and rear doors/tailgate).

or

Locking

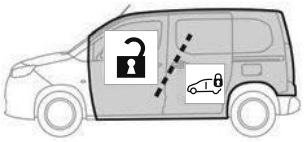
Press to lock

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Selective Unlocking of Cabin and Load Compartment







Selective unlocking allows you to unlock either the doors of the cabin and the fuel filler flap or the load compartment, i.e., sliding doors, rear door / tailgate. Selective unlocking has to be configured.



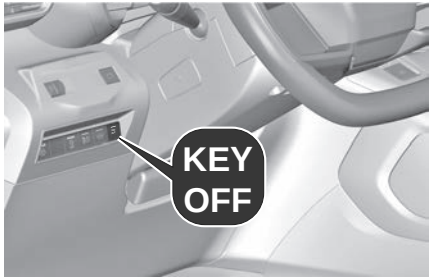
To activate, switch on the ignition and then press more than two seconds. The LED illuminates.
An audible signal is given and depending on the configuration of the vehicle, a message is displayed in Info Display.
To deactivate, switch on the ignition and then press for more than two seconds. The LED extinguishes.
Tailgate Operation ⇨ 22

Key Off Mode

Allows to leave vehicle with the engine running without the electronic key being inside the vehicle.
This mode enables electrical devices to remain operational, ensuring thermal comfort, vehicle security and the operation of essential vehicle systems.

Activation / deactivation

Press KEY OFF to activate (indicator lamp comes on)/deactivate (indicator lamp goes off).



Central Locking Button

⚠ CAUTION

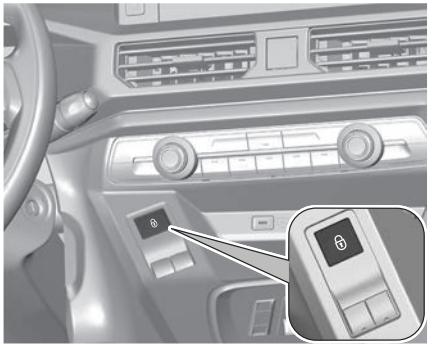
With an electric motor, this mode remains active for about 10 minutes after the vehicle is locked.

Locks or unlocks all doors and the load compartment from inside the passenger compartment. If the vehicle is equipped with electronic key system, the fuel filler flap is locked or unlocked, too.



Press 🔒 to lock (indicator lamp comes on) /unlock (indicator lamp goes off).

Smart Compact Van 



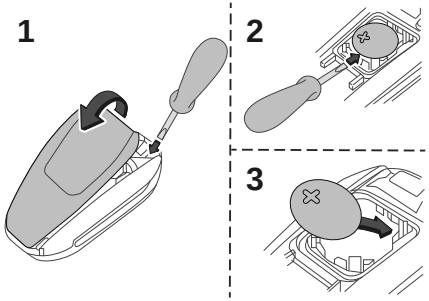
Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control
- Electronic key is out of reception range
- The battery voltage is too low
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces. Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. To unclip the cover insert a small screwdriver between the back cover and the remote control.
2. Remove the back cover from the remote control.
3. Extract the flat battery from its location.
4. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
5. Clip the cover in place.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

⚠ WARNING

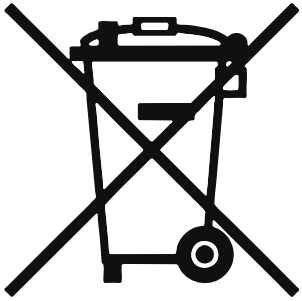
This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!
Replace the battery with the same type.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.



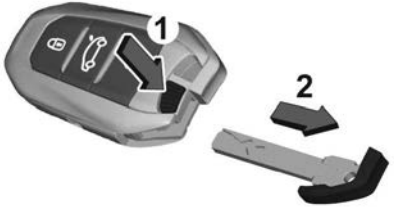
Emergency Key

In case of fault with the Electronic Key or Remote Control, and if changing the battery doesn't resolve the issue, the Emergency Key can be used to access the vehicle.
Battery Replacement ⇨ 12
Electronic Key System ⇨ 10
Depending on version, to access the Emergency Key:

- press the button to unfold the key

or

- slide button (**1**) to the right and pull out the key stub (**2**)



⚠ WARNING

Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

Locking / Unlocking the Vehicle

Insert the Emergency Key into the lock and turn it clockwise / counterclockwise to lock / unlock the Driver's door.
If the Central Locking System is operative, the other doors will also unlock, otherwise the other doors can be opened using the interior handles.



To lock the other doors if the central locking system is not working:

1. Make sure the child lock is not activated.
2. Remove the black cover by using a key and turning clockwise.
3. Insert key carefully and move to the inner side of the door without turning the key.
4. Remove key and attach black cover.

The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag.
The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobilizer system.
The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Vehicle Security System

Anti-Theft Locking System

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors.
All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.
Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system.

This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating

- Mechanical key: Insert the key and turn it clockwise twice within 5 seconds.
- Remote control: Press on the radio remote control twice within 5 seconds.
- Electronic key: Press twice with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) within five seconds.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system. It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, hood
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment

Activation

Ignition must be switched off, all doors must be closed and the electronic key must not remain in the vehicle otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- **Radio remote control**: Monitoring of doors, tailgate and hood is activated five seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing .
  Monitoring of passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing .
- **Electronic key system**: Monitoring of doors, tailgate and hood is activated 5 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings.
  Monitoring of passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment is activated 45 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings.

Activation is confirmed by the flashing of the status LED and coming on of the turn lights for a short time.
If a door or the tailgate is not correctly closed and the vehicle is locked via remote control or electronic key system, the vehicle remains unlocked. However, the anti-theft alarm system will be activated after 45 seconds.

NOTE

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

Activation without Monitoring of Passenger Compartment



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Switch of ignition.

2. Press OFF within the next 10 seconds until the LED of the button illuminates constantly.
3. Get out of the vehicle.
4. Lock the vehicle immediately by using the remote control, pressing with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) or pressing the tailgate button.

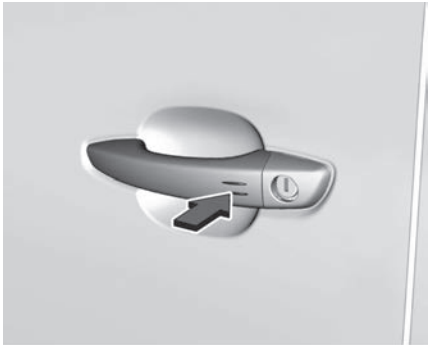
Activation is indicated by the flashing of the status LED.

Indication

LED in the central locking button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.
The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one meter of the relevant door side.
The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

NOTE

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door is opened, the vehicle is automatically re-locked after 30 seconds. In this case, the anti-theft alarm will be reactivated, too.

Locking the Vehicle with Exterior Perimeter Monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

- Presence of an occupant or a pet
- Slightly open window or sunroof
- Washing the vehicle
- Changing a wheel
- Towing the vehicle
- Transport on a ship or ferry

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

1. Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
2. Get out of the vehicle.
3. Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Key-less Entry and Start system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

NOTE

To be taken into account, the deactivation must be carried out every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

1. Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Key-less Entry and Start system. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
2. Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Key-less Entry and Start system. The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Locking the Vehicle without Activation of the Anti-Theft Alarm

Lock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.

Remote Control Fault

1. Unlock the vehicle by inserting and turning the integrated key of the remote control or the electronic key system in the lock cylinder of the driver's door.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. The horn of the anti-theft alarm will sound.
4. Switch on ignition.
5. The horn will stop sounding and the status LED extinguishes.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.
The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing on one of the front door handles at the markings with electronic key system. The LED of the button will extinguish and the turn lights flash for a short time.
A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the rapid flashing of the LED of the button. If the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for 10 minutes to restart the engine.

Immobilizer

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.
The immobilizer is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

NOTE

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

NOTE

The immobilizer does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it.
Switch on the anti-theft alarm system.

Doors

Automatic Door Locks

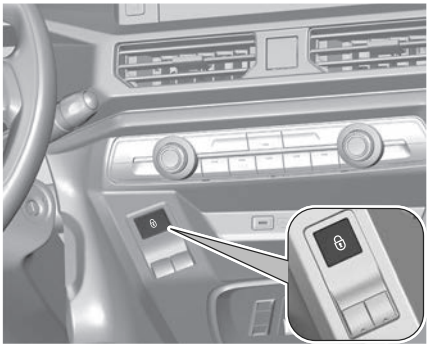
Automatic Locking after Driving Off

This system allows automatic locking of the doors and the tailgate as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h.
If one of the doors or the tailgate is open, the automatic central locking does not take place. This is signaled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of in the instrument cluster, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.



This function can be activated or deactivated at any time. With the ignition on, press until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.
The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Smart Compact Van



Automatic re-lock after unlocking

This feature automatically locks all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

NOTE

Carrying long or voluminous objects

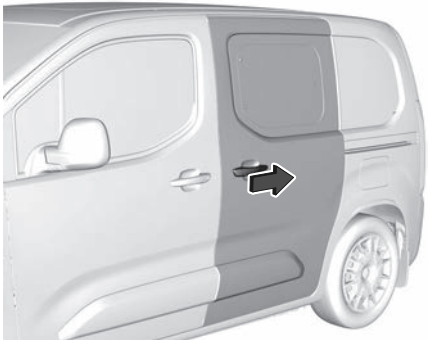
If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and

the alerts mentioned above will appear.Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

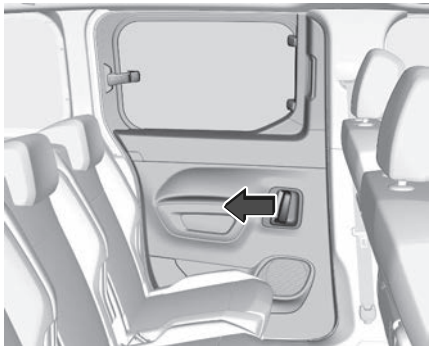
Sliding Door Operation

Opening

After unlocking, pull the outside door handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.



To open from inside push the handle and slide the door towards the rear beyond the point of resistance.



Closing

To close from outside pull the door handle and slide the door towards the front until it locks.
To close from inside push the handle and slide the door beyond the point of resistance. Then, use the shaped recess at the top of the door pillar to slide the door towards the front until it locks.

⚠ WARNING

On a steep slope, the door's weight may cause it to move, opening or closing **suddenly** as a result.

Avoid leaving the vehicle unsupervised on a steep slope with one or more doors open.

⚠ CAUTION

Ensure the sliding side door is fully closed and secure before driving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damage, do not attempt to operate the sliding side door when the fuel filler flap is open.

⚠ DANGER

Do not drive with the sliding side door open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Doors Clearances

When open, a door projects beyond the body.

Allow adequate clearance when parking alongside walls, lamp-posts, high pavements, etc.

NOTE

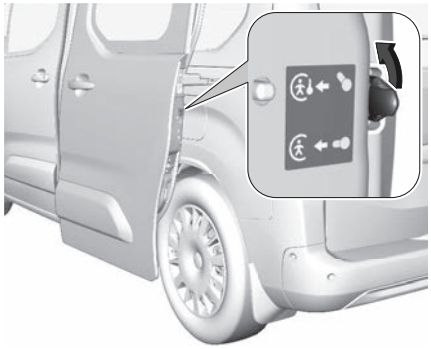
When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

Rear Doors Child Locks

Mechanical Child Locks

WARNING

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.



Turn the child lock in the rear door to the vertical position. The door cannot be opened from the inside.
To deactivate, turn the child lock to the horizontal position.

Electric Child Locks



Depending on version, the button may be located in the driver's door or below the light switch.



Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors via the interior door handles and the use of the rear power windows.

Switching on

To switch on the electric child locks press the button. The indicator light of the button comes on, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on until the child lock is switched off.

Switching off

To switch off the electric child locks press the button again. The indicator light on button goes off, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on while child lock is switched on.

Passive Entry

This system allows automatic vehicle locking and unlocking simply by detection of the electronic key. The electronic key must be on the driver's person.

NOTE

If the vehicle is not closed properly or the electronic key remains in the vehicle, locking will not be permitted. If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, a warning chime sounds after a few seconds.

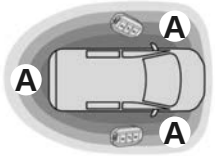
NOTE

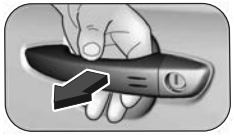
The electronic key may not operate if placed close to electronic devices such as mobile phones or laptop computers.

NOTE

The separation of the **cabin** and **loading area** unlocking is a security measure.

It is used to lock out access to the part of the vehicle in which you are not present.





The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

Unlocking



NOTE

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

Pass a hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors or the rear door to unlock the vehicle or press the middle tailgate button.
Keep the hand behind the door handle or keep the tailgate button pressed to open the windows.
Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display.
Two settings are selectable:

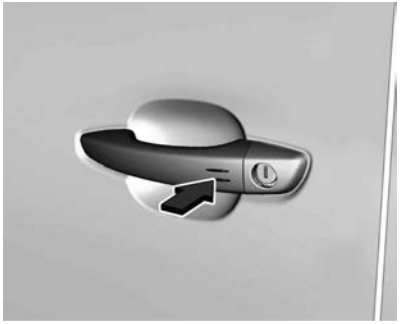
- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of the front door handles or the handle of the rear door. If the vehicle is equipped with a tailgate, press the tailgate button.
- Only the front doors and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind one of front door handles.

The Hazard Warning Flashers will flash twice to confirm unlocking.

Unlocking the Load Compartment

Only the load compartment, i.e., the rear door or the tailgate, will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the rear door handle or pressing the tailgate button.

Locking



Press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings) or press the tailgate button.
All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be locked.
If the vehicle is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.
The Hazard Warning Flashers will flash once to confirm locking.

Tailgate Operation

⚠ DANGER

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle.
This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

⚠ CAUTION

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

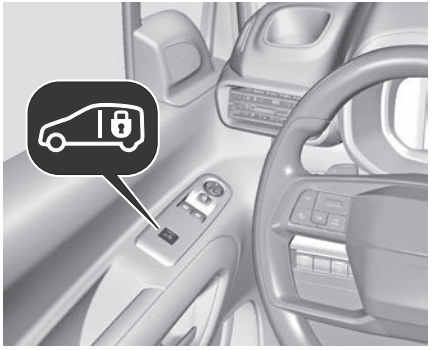
ⓘ NOTE

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

ⓘ NOTE

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself.
In this case lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Opening



Depending on the version, press to unlock the tailgate.
After unlocking, press the middle tailgate button and open the tailgate.



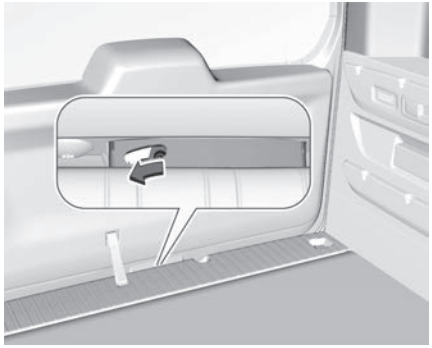
Selective unlocking/locking ⇨ 11

Closing



Grab the interior handle to close the tailgate.
Do not push the middle tailgate button whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Emergency Tailgate Unlocking



An access hole between the door and the floor enables the tailgate latch to be released using a suitable tool.
Push lever to the left to unlock and open the tailgate.

Rear window

The rear window can be opened to give access to the load compartment without opening the tailgate. The tailgate and the rear window cannot be opened at the same time.

Opening



After unlocking, press the right tailgate button and open the rear window.

Closing

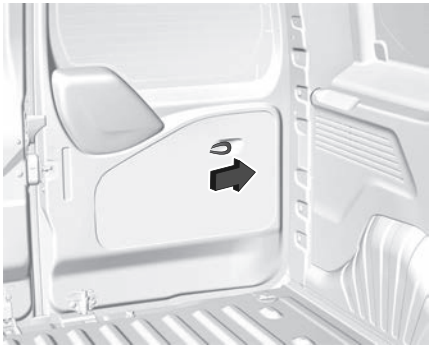
Press on the centre of the rear window until it is fully closed.

Rear Doors

Unlock the rear doors with the remote control or by turning the key in the rear door lock cylinder.
Always open the left hand door before the right hand door.



1. To open the left hand rear door, pull the exterior handle.



2. The door is opened from inside the vehicle by pulling the interior cable.



3. Use the lever to open the right hand rear door.

⚠ WARNING

The rear lights may be obscured if the rear doors are open and the vehicle is parked on the roadside. Make other road users aware of the vehicle, by using a warning triangle or other equipment specified in the road traffic regulations.



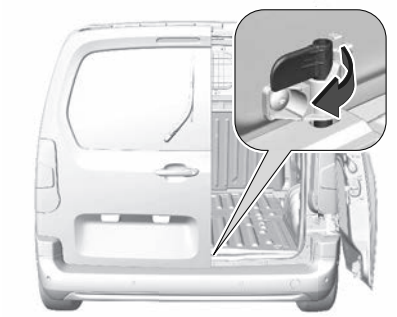
The doors are retained in the 90º position by locking stays. To open the doors to 180º, push the latch and swing open to the desired position.
Before closing the doors ensure that the locking stays are in the 90º position.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure extended opening doors are secured when fully opened.
Opened doors may slam closed due to the force of the wind!

Always close the right hand door before the left hand door.

Driving with an Open Load Compartment



In exceptional cases only, it is possible to drive with the right-hand rear door open, e.g. if long objects need to be transported. Open the left-hand followed by the right-hand rear door, then close the left-hand rear door and lock it. The left-hand door is kept closed by the distinctive "yellow" lock, positioned at the base of the door.

⚠ DANGER

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.
If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.
Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.
Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTE

Do not use the left-hand rear door to hold objects in place.
If possible, secure objects with lashing straps attached to lashing eyes

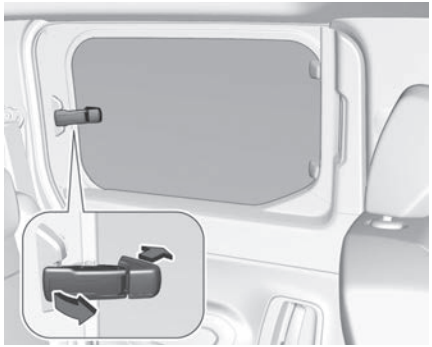
⚠ CAUTION

Always make sure the load in the vehicle is securely stowed when driving with an open load compartment.
Always comply with local and national regulations.
Do not use tools to force the latch in the locked position.

Windows

Manual Windows

Rear Windows



To partially open the rear windows, tilt the lever and push it fully to lock the windows in the open position.

⚠ WARNING

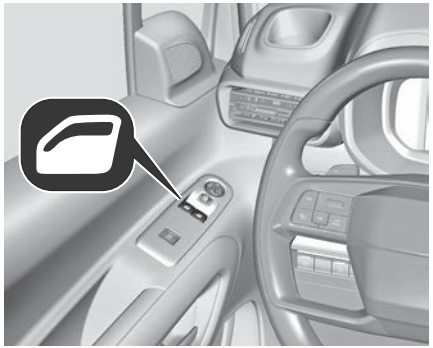
Do not close the window by pressing on it from the outside or use the window as a handle to close the sliding door. Risk of damage!

Power Windows

⚠ WARNING

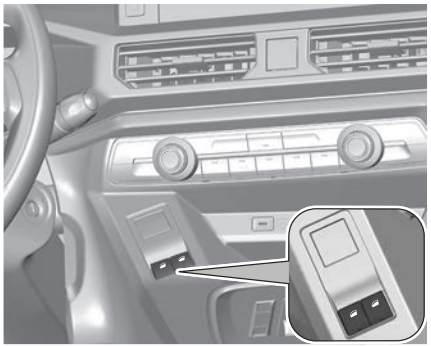
Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.
If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.
Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.
Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.
Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.
Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Smart Compact Van



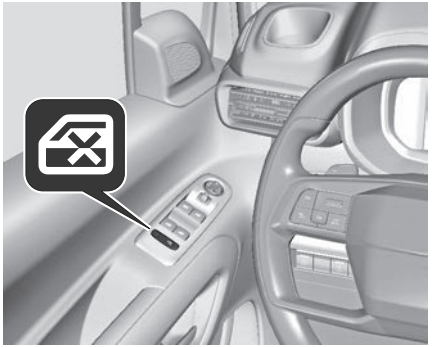
Safety function

This function depends upon version.
If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled.
To stop movement, release the switch.

Child Safety System for Rear Windows



Press to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates.
To activate, press again.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initializing the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Activate the window electronics as follows:

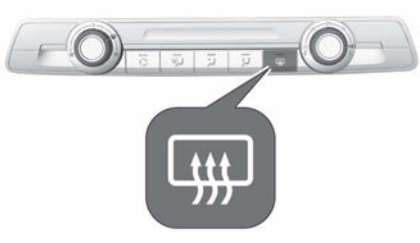
1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Rear Window

Heated Rear Window

Operated by pressing ⊞ together with heated exterior mirrors.

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.
Depending on climate control system, ⊞ is located at a different position.



Windshield

Windshield Stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windshield in the area of the interior mirror. Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice. Otherwise, the detection zone of the rain sensor / light sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windshield Replacement

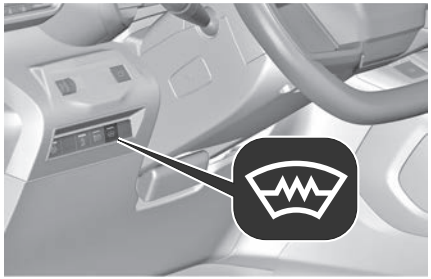
⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.

Heated Windshield



This function heats the windshield along its bottom and along the driver's side of the windshield.
Thus, the function allows a fast detaching of the windshield wiper blades if they are frozen to the windshield.
Additionally, an accumulation of snow caused by the operation of the windshield wipers is prevented.

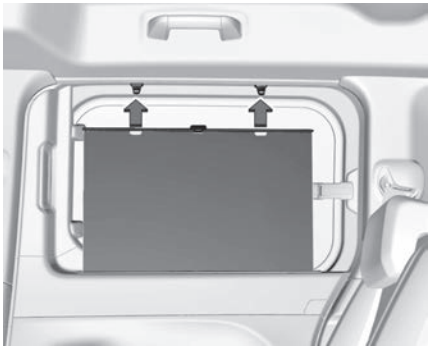


Heating is operated by pressing  .
The LED on the button will illuminate.
The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.
Pressing  again will switch off the heating operation. LED in button will extinguish.

Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swiveled to the side to prevent dazzling.
If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.
A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Roller blinds

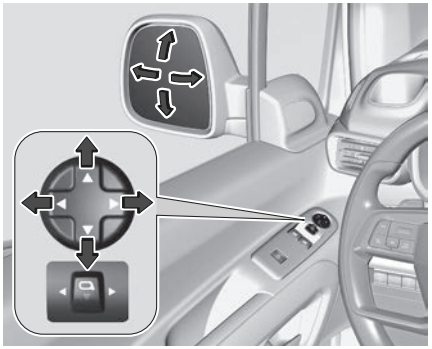


To reduce sunlight at the second row seats, pull the blind upwards using the grip and engage it at the top of the door frame.

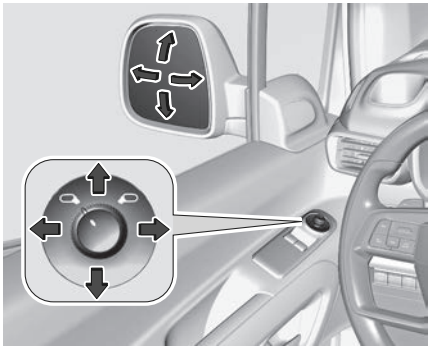
Mirrors

Power Outside Mirrors

Type 1:



Type 2:



Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control to the desired side. Adjust respective mirror by tilting the four-way control.

Folding mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric folding



Pull the mirror button rearwards.
Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Pull the mirror button rearwards again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.
If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pulling mirror button rearwards will only electrically extend the other mirror.

NOTE

If the mirrors are folded using the interior control, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

NOTE

If the automatic folding setting is disabled in the vehicle settings on the Infotainment display, the mirrors will not fold when the vehicle is locked.

Automatic folding

When the vehicle is unlocked, the mirrors swing to their normal mounting position. When the vehicle is locked, the mirrors are folded down.

Heated Mirrors



Depending on the version, heating is operated by pressing or .

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Convex Mirrors

⚠ WARNING

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Inside Rearview Mirror

Manual anti-dazzle

To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.

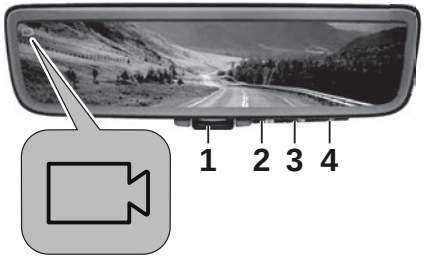
Digital Rearview Mirror

When the ignition is switched on, to improve the visibility of the rear of the vehicle, this system uses a camera to display a view of the vehicle's rear environment on the interior rear view mirror.

i NOTE

When the ignition is on, the mirror displays a camera symbol for 5 seconds.

The camera symbol is always present in Digital mode.



1 Lever from digital to optical mode and vice versa

2 Setting mode (field of vision angle or brightness adjustment)

3 Decrease/down button to adjust the settings

4 Increase/up button to adjust the settings

⚠ WARNING

Routinely check your exterior mirrors while driving and during maneuvers.

⚠ CAUTION

Some items may not be seen by the rear camera.

⚠ WARNING

Some vehicles may be difficult to see (dark colors, lights off) when the brightness of the screen is reduced using the vehicle's lighting dimmer.

⚠ CAUTION

The image quality may be affected by the environment, the exterior conditions (rain, dirt, dust), the driving mode and the lighting conditions (night, low sun).
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened.

⚠ WARNING

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
During parking maneuvers and lane changes, it is important to check the sides of the vehicle using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.

Activation / Deactivation

The system starts when the ignition is switched on. Pull or push the lever **1** to switch between digital or optical mode.

ⓘ NOTE

The optical mode allows you to use the interior mirror without the camera.

Adjusting the mirror

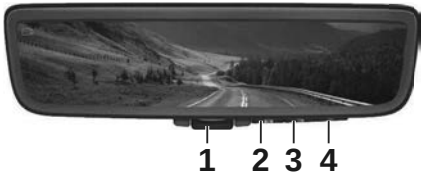
ⓘ NOTE

Ensure that the mirror adjustment is done in Optical mode only. Otherwise, there is a risk of a double image in Digital mode.

ⓘ NOTE

Light reflections may occur in the digital rearview mirror, particularly from the glass roof.
In optical mode, the mirror provides a direct view through the rear glass.
In Digital mode, tilting the display slightly downward may result in a sharper image, but it may also increase reflections from rear passengers at night when interior lighting is on.

Settings



Press button (**2**) to display the settings menu (depending on the menu displayed)

Press the button (**2**) once to access the brightness setting.

Press the button (**2**) twice to access the field of view angle setting.

Brightness setting : press arrow buttons (**3**) and (**4**) to adjust the brightness of the screen.

Field of view angle : press arrow buttons (**3**) and (**4**) to adjust the angle of the camera up/down.

The setting menu is closed automatically after 5 seconds if no button is pressed.

View modes

In addition to Optical Mode and the default Digital Mode, the Digital Rearview Mirror can also display:

- **Surveillance rear view**, shows a long-distance view of the area at the rear.



- **Lateral View**, using a camera installed on the passenger side external mirror, the display will split between the default viewing angle and a view of the passenger side exterior.



To toggle the Lateral View on/off:

- Press the button on the end of the Lighting Control Stalk.

Or

- Press button (**2)** on the mirror housing.

When carrying an outsize load

When carrying a long load in the cargo area with the right door open, the Digital Rearview Mirror digital mode will be disabled by default.

After securing the load and ensuring the left door is properly locked, to re-enable the digital view:

- Press and hold button (**2**) for 5 seconds then release.

The Digital Rearview Mirror display will activate and display the normal digital view.
Driving with an Open Load Compartment ⇨25

Operating Limits

The system may be disrupted (or even damaged) and not work in the following situations:

- Installation of a bicycle carrier on the tailgate
- Attachment of a trailer to the towball

Fault

In the event of a fault, the reproduction screen becomes black, this symbol is displayed and then the graphical explanation of how to switch to the optical mode is temporarily displayed.



Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a stuck button, press of the button for 30 seconds.

⚠ CAUTION

The camera must not be obscured (by a sticker, a bicycle carrier, etc.).

NOTE

The field of vision of the rear camera (**surveillance rear view** and **visual reversing aid**) may vary depending on the load in the vehicle.

NOTE

If a trailer is attached to the towball, when reverse gear is engaged the **visual reversing aid** will no longer work until the trailer is disconnected. The **surveillance rear view** becomes the default view.

NOTE

If the system develops a fault, go to a dealer to avoid any safety problems.

- Switch to Optical mode when leaving someone inside the vehicle and switching off the ignition. After 60 seconds the Digital mode switches off, which can be disorienting for the occupants.
- The Digital mode can cause discomfort for people with presbyopia or people sensitive to motion sickness.
- Don't be distracted by the Digital mode when driving at night in illuminated areas due to the image quality.
- The image in Digital mode may present the following video artifacts: smear, bloom, lens flare, point light sources.
- The view in Digital mode may be inaccurate with the tailgate open or after an impact.
- The view in Digital mode may be obscured if the vehicle is fitted with a bicycle rack or when towing a trailer.

Child surveillance mirror

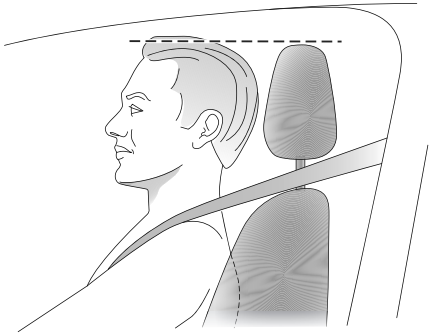


A child surveillance mirror allows to observe the rear seats. The mirror can be adjusted.

Head Restraints

Head Restraints Position

The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

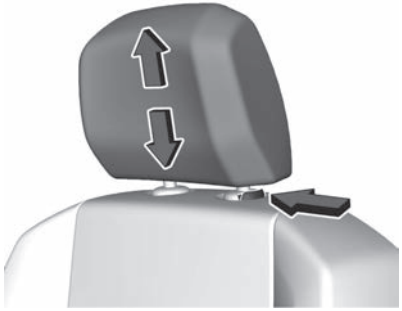


⚠ WARNING

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

Front Head Restraints

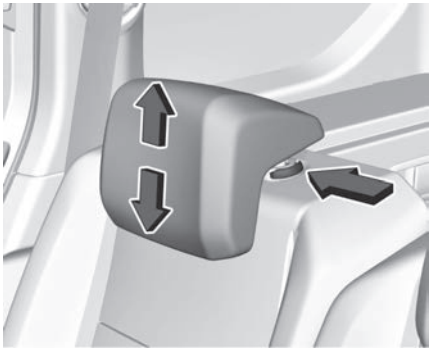
Adjustment



Pull the head restraint upwards or push it downwards.

Rear Head Restraints

Adjustment



Pull the head restraint upwards or push it downwards.

Removing a Head Restraints

Press the catch, pull the respective head restraint upwards and remove.

Seats

Front Seat Position

⚠ WARNING

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

⚠ WARNING

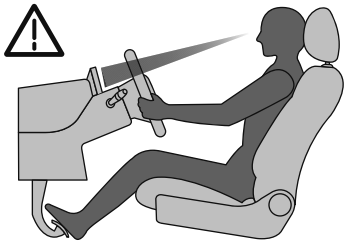
Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

⚠ DANGER

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

⚠ WARNING

Never store any objects under the seats.



Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- head restraint height
- seat backrest angle
- seat cushion height
- longitudinal seat positio
- steering wheel height and reach.
- rear view mirror and door mirrors

Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel and surroundings can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible.
  Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Manual Front Seats

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Longitudinal adjustment



Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.



Depending on version, pull the lever of the passenger seat and slide the seat, then release the handle.

Backrest inclination



Push the lever, adjust inclination and release the lever. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat height



Push the lever down to lower the seat. Pull the lever up to lift the seat.

Lumbar support



Turn the hand-wheel to suit personal requirements.

Heated Seats



Activate seat heating by pressing for the respective front seat.
The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.
Pressing once more deactivates seat heating.

With the two-seat front bench seat, the driver's seat control switches the heating on or off for the bench seat's outer seat.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

⚠ WARNING

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Folding Front Seats

Depending on version, the front passenger seat can be folded flat to the table position.

Folding Single Seat Front Passenger Side

Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible, to avoid contact with the instrument panel during folding.
Push the head restraint down or remove it before folding backrest .
Depending on version, remove the armrest



Push lever, fold backrest fully forwards and release the lever. Then push the

backrest down further until it is completely flat.

Unfolding Single Seat Front Passenger Side

To restore the seat to the upright position, pull up the backrest as far as it will go.
Pull the lever and raise backrest fully then release the lever.

Folding Bench Seat Front Passenger Side



1. Fold down the centre backrest by pulling the loop.



2. Fold down the outer backrest by pulling the loop.
3. Swing the backrest forwards until the seat is lowered on the vehicle floor.
   This position allows you to transport long loads inside the vehicle with the doors closed. When retracted, the maximum weight on the backrest is 50 kg.



To lift the seat cushion pull the lever and raise the seat cushion against the backrest until it locks.

Unfolding bench seat front passenger side

To restore the backrest to the upright position, pull up the seat till it is engaged.
To restore the seat cushion to the original position, push the lever and lower the seat cushion till it is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Front Armrest



The armrest can be folded up.



To remove the armrest fold it up, push and turn it to the position shown in the picture.
Then pull off the armrest from the backrest.
To fit the armrest engage it in the backrest. Push and fold the armrest in the upright position. Pull the armrest out a bit and fold it downwards.

Rear Seat Position

Second Row Seats

Depending on the equipment, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three parts.
All parts can be folded down.
Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

- Move front seats forward.
- Remove the load compartment cover.

Third Row Seats

⚠ WARNING

When seats are being adjusted or folded, keep hands and feet away from the moving area. Risk of injury. Ensure that there are no objects on the anchor points or rails.
Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably. Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

⚠ WARNING

When installing the rear seats, ensure that the seat assembly is properly located on the anchor points, the locks are fully engaged, and the backrest is returned to the correct position.
Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of hard braking or a collision.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle.

Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the third row seats.

Folding Rear Seats

Second Row Seats

1. Push the head restraint downwards.
2. Check that the outer seat belts are lying correctly on the backrests.



3. Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



4. Depending on version, fold down the centre backrest by pulling the loop.



5. Alternatively fold seat backrests from the load compartment: pull lever on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the rear seat backrests.

⚠ WARNING

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. The backrest is folded with considerable power.
Risk of injury, particularly to children.
Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle.

Unfolding the seats

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ WARNING

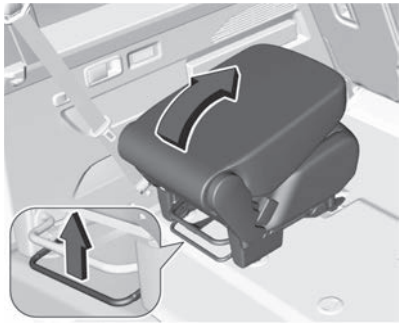
When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

Third Row Seats

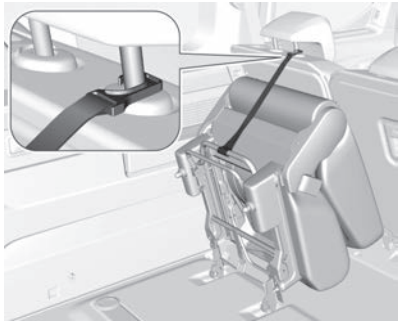
1. Push the head restraint downwards and if necessary fold down the seats of the second row.



2. Pull the lever and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion.



3. Pull the handle and tilt the entire seat forwards.



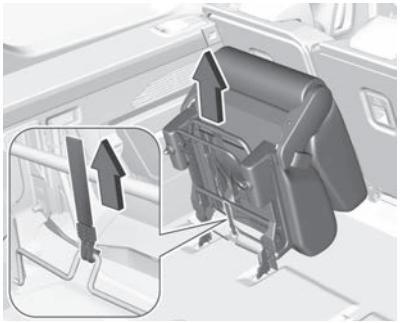
4. Secure the folded seat in the upright position by attaching the strap to one of the pillars of the head restraint in front of the folded seat.

Unfolding the Seats

1. Ensure that the seat belts do not obstruct the unfolding manoeuvre.
2. Remove the strap and lower the seat assembly to the floor, ensuring the rear support is located on the anchor point and securely latched into position.
3. Raise the backrest and adjust the head restraint.

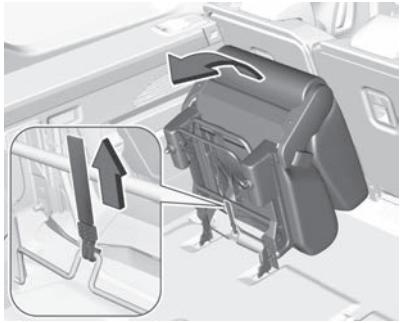
Removing the Seats

1. Push the head restraint downwards and if necessary fold down the seats of the second row.
2. Pull the lever and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion. Pull the handle and tilt the entire seat forwards (refer to "Folding the seats" above).



3. Pull the loop to disengage the locks and remove the seat assembly from the floor anchor points.

Installing the Seats



1. Attach the seat assembly front supports to the front anchor points.
2. Fold the seat backwards to the floor to fix its rear anchor point.
3. Raise the backrest and adjust the head restraint.

Longitudinal Seat Adjustment



Pull the handle, slide the seat, then release the handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Labels in row 3





While driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger seated next to a seat in the fully folded position.

Folding the centre seatback



The front centre passenger seat backrest has a document tray.

⚠ WARNING

When the front passenger seat is in the folded position, the front passenger airbag system must be deactivated.

Seat Belts

The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠ WARNING

Fasten seat belt before each trip. In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.
Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.
Have damaged components replaced.
After an accident, have the seat belts and triggered seat belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

ⓘ NOTE

Make sure that the seat belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharpedged objects nor trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the seat belt retractors.

ⓘ NOTE

Use the belt buckle inteded for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

Seat belt reminder

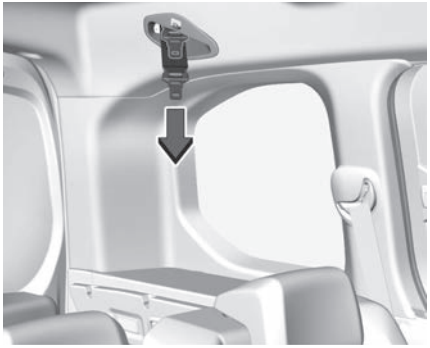
Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator for the respective seat in the roof console.

Smart Compact Van

The Flexiseat does not have a seat belt sensor.

Centre Seat Belt of the Second Seat Row

The centre seat is equipped with a particular three-point seat belt.



1. Pull latch plates with the seat belt out of seat belt holder in the roof.



2. Insert lower latch plate into left-hand buckle (**1**) at the centre seat. Guide the upper latch plate with the seat belt over the lap area and the shoulder (do not twist) and insert it into right-hand buckle (**2**) at centre seat.
3. To unfasten the seat belt, first press the button on the right-hand buckle (**2**) and remove upper latch plate.
4. Then press the button on the left-hand buckle (**1**) and remove lower latch plate. The seat belt retracts automatically.

Using Seat Belts while Pregnant



⚠ WARNING

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer second row seat belts are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of seat belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the seat belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator .
Triggered seat belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop.
Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

NOTE

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the seat belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to seat belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Inertia Reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the

shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Progressive Force Limiting System

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, taking their stature into account, thus improving their protection.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning light comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags System

Airbag System Introduction

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.
When triggered the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ WARNING

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

⚠ CAUTION

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ WARNING

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing

any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

⚠ WARNING

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system. Electronic detectors record and analyze the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

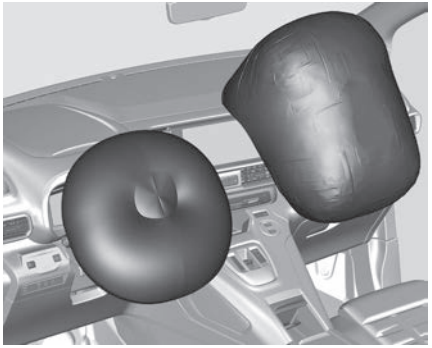
ⓘ NOTE

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.
Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.
Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Front Airbags

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the roof on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word AIRBAG.
The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

⚠ WARNING

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.
Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Smart Compact Van 

The SCV version does not feature a front airbag on the passenger side.

Lateral Airbags

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG.
The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

⚠ WARNING

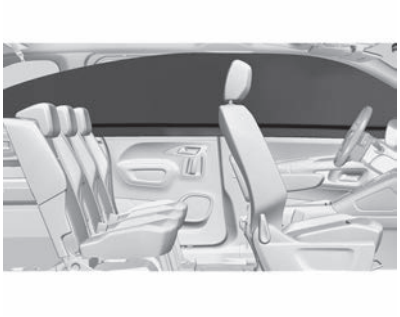
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

ⓘ NOTE

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain Airbags

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.
The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

⚠ WARNING

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

Airbag System Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation



The front passenger airbag must be set in accordance with the type of Child Restraint System used. Follow the Child Restraints Installation Table. ⇨ 56
The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active. The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

Deactivate the passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the Child Restraints Installation Table Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.
Smart Compact Van : Deactivate the airbag when using the Cargo Box features.

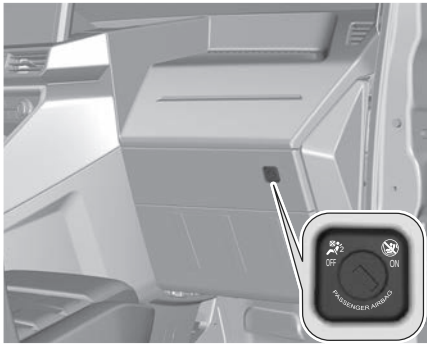


Use the ignition key to choose the position:

OFF Front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator illuminates continuously in the center console

ON Front passenger airbag is active

Smart Compact Van



Activate/Deactivate the airbag **only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.**



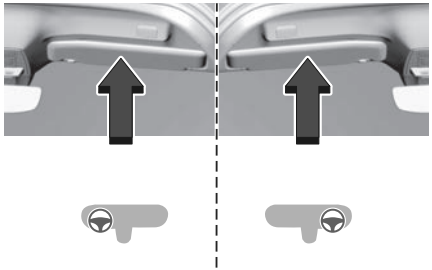
After the ignition is turned on:

- If the control indicator **ON** illuminates for approx. 60 seconds, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.
- If the control indicator **OFF** illuminates, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

Consult a workshop immediately:

- If neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.
- If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system cannot be determined. No person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

Warning Label - Front Passenger Airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:



⚠ DANGER

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.

FR: NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.

ES: NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.

IT: NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

Child restraints

General Recommendations

⚠ WARNING

When carrying children in the vehicle, you must install them in a suitable seat. **Never carry a child on your lap.**

⚠ WARNING

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Make sure to comply with the instructions hereinafter and the ones provided with the child seat.

ⓘ NOTE

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 years old or less than 1.5 meters tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Children aged 15 months or less must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.** The use of "rearward facing" seats is recommended for children until the age of 3.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats**

⚠ WARNING

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system which has

been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

NOTE

Seatbelts

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilize it.
When installing a child seat on a rear seat, ensure that the seat does not interfere with the operation of the seatbelt on the rear center seat.
Ensure that the seatbelt is properly positioned and tighten it or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

WARNING

Headrests

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest or a Top Tether system on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

WARNING

Additional protections.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from traffic.
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child Restraint Installation on a Front Seat

WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward-facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.



WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be activated when installing a forward-facing child seat.



NOTE

Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened**.



Child Restraint Installation on a Rear Seat

Forward-facing or rearward-facing.





1. Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
2. Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Center rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

Seat-specific Recommendations

WARNING

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

WARNING

Installing a Child Seat with support leg

Ensure that the Support Leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
Never install a seat with support leg on the center rear passenger seat.

WARNING

When the child restraint system is not used, secure it with the seat belt or with the ISOFIX anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it unsecured inside the passenger compartment. In this way, in the event of sudden braking or an accident, it will not cause injuries to the occupants.

WARNING

The head restraint must always be present in the vehicle and fitted if the seat is used by an adult passenger or a child sitting in a restraint system without backrest.

⚠ WARNING

After installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, do not move the seat forwards or back as it could loosen the attachments. Remove the child restraint system to adjust the seat position. Install the child restraint system again once the seat has been adjusted.

Seat Belt Installation

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a seat belt.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat.

ISOFIX Anchorage Connectors

Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.
The outer rear seats feature ISOFIX compliant anchorage points, and depending on version, the center seat may also feature ISOFIX anchorage points.



Row 2



The anchorage point are located behind zips between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion. They are indicated by the label on the backrest. Open the zipper to get access to the mountings.

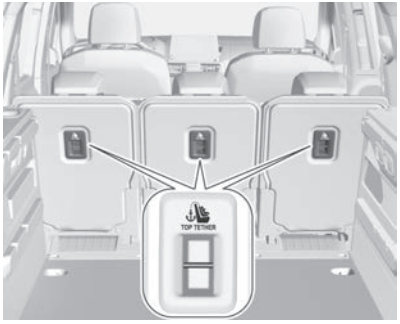
ⓘ NOTE

When fastening ISOFIX compatible child restraint systems on adjustable passenger seats, first incline the backrest as far as necessary backwards in order to get access to the ISOFIX anchorage connectors.

After the proper fastening of the ISOFIX child restraint system, incline the backrest forward again.

Top-Tether Anchors

In addition to the ISOFIX rings, Top-tether seats must be secured to an additional ring, located behind the seat.



Before installing a Top-Tether seat:

1. Remove and stow the head restraint for the seat before installing the child seat.
2. Install the child seat on ISOFIX mountings.
3. Pass the strap of the Child Seat over the back rest and secure it to the Top-Tether rings.

4. Tighten the strap according to the instructions of the manual provided with the Child Seat.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table

i-Size Child Seats

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according to UN Regulation No. 129. All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, as indicated in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

NOTE

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets to prevent the seat from tipping forwards in the event of a collision.



i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol.

Recommended Child Seats

Size of the child (ECE R129)	Installation type	Child restraint system	Remark
Size: 40 - 85 cm (From birth to 15 months) (Up to 13 kg)	Rearward facing 	**"RÖMER Baby-Safe PRO"**	Recommended with its ISOFIX base (**RÖMER Vario Base 5Z**)
Size: 61- 105 cm (From 3 months to 4 years) (Up to 18 kg)	Rearward facing Size: 61 - 105 cm  Forward facing Size: 76 - 105 cm 	**"RÖMER Dualfix 5Z"**	Installed with its ISOFIX base (**RÖMER Vario Base 5Z**) Rearward facing installation is recommended
Size: 100 - 150 cm (From 3.5 to 12 years) (Up to 36 kg)	Forward facing 	**"RÖMER KidFix Pro"**	Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. **Bought in Stellantis & You, Sales and Services** **We recommend using child seat with the backrest. If the backrest is removed for child over 138 cm, the secure guard must also be removed**

⚠ DANGER

If a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system is not fixed to all three anchorages, it will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously or fatally injured.

NOTE

Please follow the child restraint manufacturers' instructions for installing the appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.

NOTE

For the semi-universal or vehicle-specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles provided in the child restraint user manual.

NOTE

Ensure that the installation location of the child restraint system inside the vehicle is correct.

Refer to the summary table for the installation of child seats.

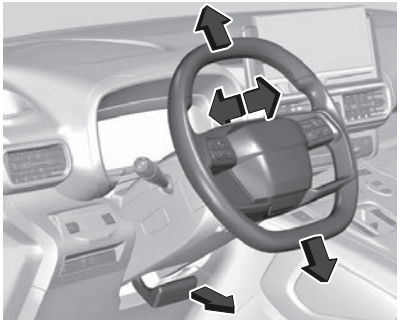
Child Restraint Installation Locations

For information on the appropriate installation locations, refer to the **"Child Restraint Installation Locations"** section ⇨ 325.

Steering Wheel

For a description of controls, refer to the following sections:
Steering Wheel Cluster Controls ⇨ 97
Steering Wheel Mounted Paddles ⇨ 155

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position in a smooth way.

Heated Steering Wheel



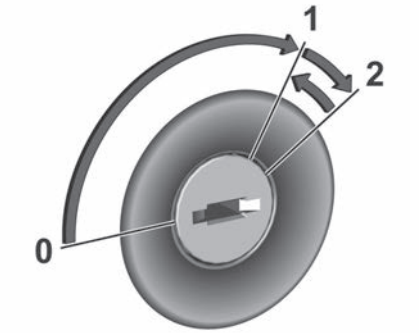
Activate heating by pressing .
Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.
The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.
Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop (Stop & Start).

Horn



Press .

Ignition Switch

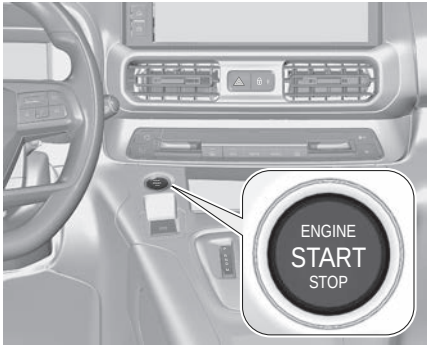


0 Ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously

1 Ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable

2 Engine start: release key after engine has been started

Power Button



The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.
Refer to the **Starting and Stopping the Engine** section. ⇨ 142

Wipers and Washers

NOTE

Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

NOTE

After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

With Intermittent Wipers

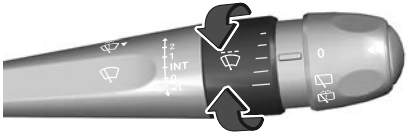
- To operate the wipers, push the stalk up/down into the desired position.



2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
INT	Intermittent wipers
0	Switching off
x1	Manual single wipe

Front Intermittent Wiping

In intermittent mode, the driver can adjust the wiping frequency by turning the ring to one of the 5 available positions.



The first (upper) position corresponds to the longest time interval between 2 wipes for light rain.

The last (lower) position corresponds to the shortest time interval between 2 wipes for heavy rain.
A rotation of the ring from a higher position to a lower position triggers a confirmation wiping.

NOTE

After the ignition has been switched off for more than 1 minute with the wiper control stalk in the **INT**, **1** or **2** position, when the ignition is switched on again:

- the system works as soon as the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), if the outside temperature is below +3°C.
- the system works immediately, if the outside temperature is above +3°C.

With AUTO Wiping

- To operate the wipers, push the stalk up/down into the desired position.



2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
AUTO	Automatic wipers
0	Switching off
x1	Manual single wipe

Automatic Windshield Wipers

In **AUTO** mode, the front wipers work automatically and adapt to the intensity of precipitation depending on the sensitivity of the sensor selected.

The rainfall detection function uses a rain/ sunshine sensor located at the top center of the windshield, behind the rear view mirror.

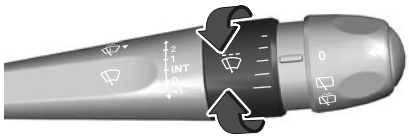
NOTE

In certain weather conditions (e.g. fog, frost, snow, projections on salty roads), the driver may have to return to manual wiping.

Switching On / Off

1. To switch on, put the wiper control stalk in the **AUTO** position.
2. Turn the ring to adjust the sensitivity of the sensor. A wiping cycle, accompanied by the display of a message, confirms that the request has been taken into account.
3. To switch off, put the wiper control stalk in another position or in the **0** position.

Adjusting the Sensitivity



- The first position (upper) corresponds to the lowest sensitivity of the sensor.
- The last position (lower) corresponds to the highest sensitivity of the sensor.

The higher the sensitivity, the faster the system reacts and increases the wiping frequency.
A rotation of the ring from a higher position to a lower position triggers a confirmation wiping.
The higher the sensitivity, the faster the system reacts and increases the wiping frequency.
A rotation of the ring from a higher position to a lower position triggers a confirmation wiping.

NOTE

After the ignition has been switched off for more than 1 minute with the wiper control stalk in the **AUTO** position, when the ignition is switched on again:

- the system works, depending on the volume of rain detected, as soon as the vehicle exceeds 10

km/h (6 mph), if the outside temperature is below +3°C.
- the system works immediately, depending on the volume of rain detected, if the outside temperature is above +3°C.

⚠ WARNING

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Windshield Washer



Pull the lever to spray washer fluid onto the windshield: the wiper wipes a few times.

ⓘ NOTE

The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.
An additional jet is installed below the midpoint of the arm on the driver's side.
Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade.
This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

ⓘ NOTE

With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to protect the passenger compartment from any odour.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Low screenwash fluid level



Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible chime every time the ignition is switched on and every time the stalk is operated.
The level of screenwash fluid is low.

Refill the screenwash reservoir (or have it refilled) the next time you stop.

Rear window wiper and washer



- Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Off

Intermittent wiping

Screenwash-wipe

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windshield wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.
Switch the rear window wiper off in car washes.

NOTE

If the ignition has been switched off with the rear wiper active, operate the ring to reactivate wiping when the ignition is switched on again (unless the ignition was off for less than 1 minute).
The first rotation of the ring to the screenwash position triggers a single wipe. If the ring is then left in the intermittent wiping position, the rear wiper adopts a wiping speed dependent on that of the windscreen wipers and the speed of the vehicle.

WARNING

In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Rear Window Washer

Turn the outer ring to spray washer fluid on the rear window.

The wiping and spraying last as long as the ring is held.

Windshield Wipers Maintenance Position

Is possible to move and lock the windshield wipers in this position when is necessary to clean or replace the wiper blades. Release the wiper blades from the windshield can also be useful in wintry weather (ice, snow).

NOTE

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Putting the Wiper Blades in Maintenance Position

1. Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the

ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

2. Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

Returning the Wiper Blades to Normal Position

To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Exterior lights

Lighting Controls

Depending on version, the light control stalk may be fitted with either a two-position or a three-position lighting ring:

Three position



Two position



To activate the exterior lighting, rotate the outer knob on the left multi function lever to one of the following positions:

AUTO — Automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight

Sidelights

Low beam / High beam

Display

A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Headlights

NOTE

Headlights when driving abroad

When driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights do not have to be adjusted.

NOTE

Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

Automatic Lighting

When the adjuster wheel is in position **AUTO** and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

Low Beam / High Beam

The system switches from low beam to high beam and vice versa to prevent glaring. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain set after the ignition is switched on again.

⚠ WARNING

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



Activation

The high beam assist can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.
High beam is switched on automatically in dark surroundings at a speed above 45 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.



The green control indicator illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated.



The blue control indicator illuminates when high beam is on.

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- driving in urban areas
- camera detects heavy fog
- rear fog light is switched on
- oncoming or preceding vehicles are detected by the camera

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

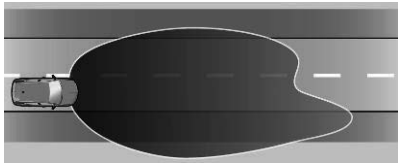
The system can be deactivated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.

Matrix-LED headlights

The Matrix-LED headlight system contains a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of the adaptive forward lighting functions.

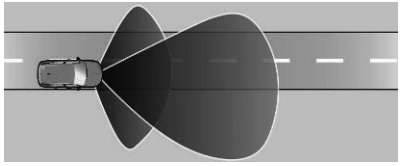
Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.
The adaptive forward lighting and the Matrix-LED headlights functions can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu.

Country light



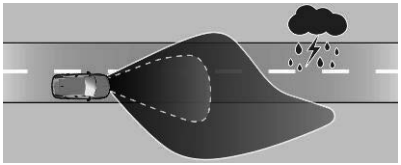
Activated automatically with vehicle speed when driving in rural areas. The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is adapted. Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

Town Light



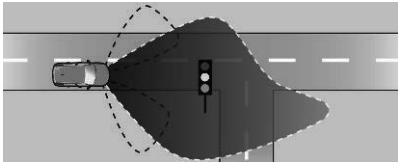
Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 50 km/h (30 mph). The light is wide and symmetrical.

Adverse Weather Light



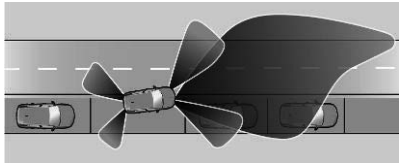
If bad weather conditions are detected, low beam is dimmed to avoid dazzling the oncoming traffic.

Cornering Light



Particular LEDs, based on direction of travel, are additionally triggered to improve lighting. This function is activated at a speed up to 40 km/h (24 mph) when turning off.

Reverse Parking Function



To assist driver's orientation when parking, cornering lights and reversing light illuminate when headlights are activated and reverse gear is engaged. Cornering light and reversing light remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging the reverse gear, or when accelerating to a speed above approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

Eco mode

During an Autostop the headlight functions are reduced to save power.

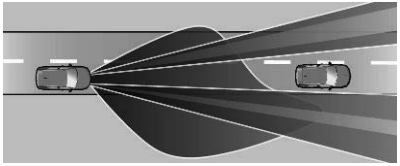
Glare-Free High Beam

⚠ WARNING

The glare-free high beam function may dazzle other drivers when the vehicle is used in countries with opposite-side traffic, e.g., a left-hand drive vehicle driven in a right-hand drive country.

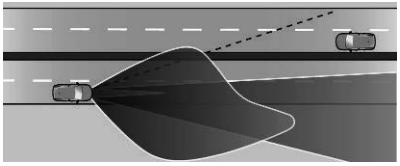
Switch off glare-free high beam function whenever you are driving in countries mentioned above.

The system enables a glare-free high beam when driving in dark surroundings.



Each LED on right or left side is triggered or faded out particularly according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without dazzling other road users.
Glare-free high beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 25 km/h (18 mph). It is switched off at a speed below 15 km/h (9 mph), but the system remains active.

Highway Mode



Motorway mode is activated automatically. Illumination is adapted to the higher speed driven on motorways. If there is oncoming traffic, following vehicles ahead or passing, the illumination on the side of the vehicle is reduced.

Fault

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

Operating Limits

The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windshield is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

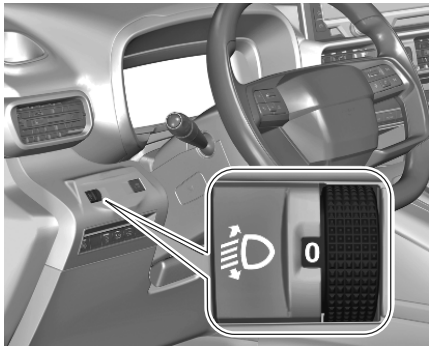
The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

⚠ CAUTION

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Headlight Height Adjustment



Turn the thumb wheel to the required position to adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling.

ICE

0 front seats occupied

1 all seats occupied

2 all seats occupied with load compartment laden

3 driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

BEV

0 front seats occupied

1 all seats occupied with or without load compartment laden

2 all seats occupied and load compartment laden

3 not used

High beam



To activate or deactivate the high beam, pull the lever beyond the resistance point.

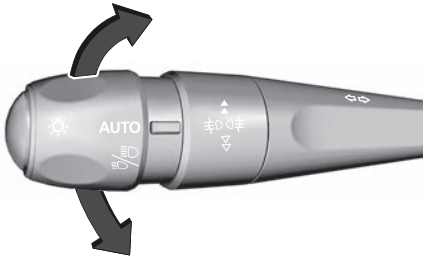
Headlight Flash

To activate the headlight flash, pull the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

Turn Signals

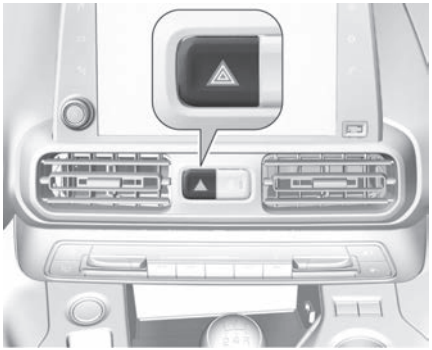
NOTE

If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).



A resistance point can be felt when moving the indicator lever.
Constant flashing is activated when the indicator lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.
Activate temporary flashing by holding the indicator lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released.
To activate three flashes, tap the indicator lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

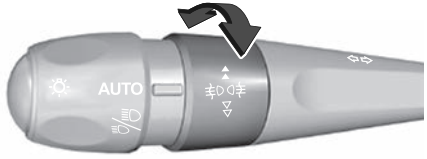
Emergency Signals



Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Fog Lights

With Front Fog Lights



Turn the ring forwards:

- Once to switch on the front fog lights.
- Twice to switch on the rear fog lights.

Turn the ring backwards:

- Once to switch off the front fog lights.
- Twice to switch off the rear fog lights.

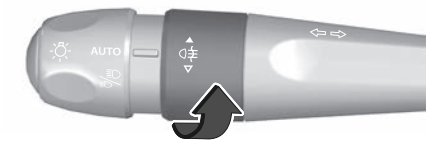
With the light switch in **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

Without Front Fog Lights

Type 1:



Type 2:



Without front fog lights:

- Turn the ring forwards / backwards to switch on / off the rear fog light

With the light switch in **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

With the light switch in position : rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.
The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e.g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

Reverse Lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically when the engine is running.
The system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Guide Me Home

Guide Me Home lighting keeps the headlights illuminated for a short while after switching off the vehicle to improve visibility at night when leaving the vehicle.

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

With Smartphone Station



You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the Guide Me Home lighting duration in the **Driving** instrument panel menu.

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the Guide Me Home lighting duration in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

Manual

With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to manually activate/deactivate the function.
Manual Guide Me Home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome Lighting

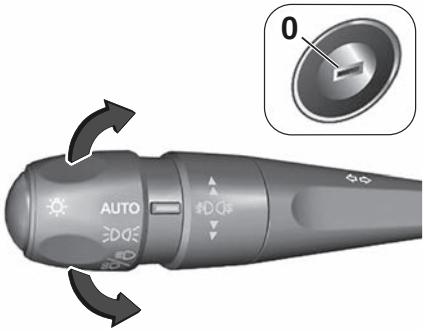
When the vehicle is unlocked in low light conditions and the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function is activated, this system automatically switches on:

- outside, sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps
- inside, courtesy lamps and footwell lighting

With Radio on 10" Central Touchscreen

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the Guide Me Home lighting duration in the **Driving** touch screen menu.

Parking Lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated. To do so:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

The activation is confirmed by an audible chime and the corresponding turn light control indicator.

Vehicle Locator Lighting

The Vehicle Locator Lighting function allows to locate the vehicle, e.g., in weak lighting conditions using the remote control.
The headlights come on and the turn lights flash for ten seconds.
Press on the remote control to activate it.

Interior Lighting

Courtesy Lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

NOTE

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.



Operate rocker switch:

Automatic switching on and off

On

Off

Reading Lights



Operate rocker switch:

On



Illustration shows rear courtesy lights.

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

The brightness of the following lights:

- instrument panel illumination
- info display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

can be adjusted in the settings app in the Info Display when the exterior lights are on.

Sunvisor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Sunroof



Keep the switch pressed at the rear, to open the sunblind.

Keep the switch pressed at the front, to open the sun-blind.

No object should push the fabric against the roof.

NOTE

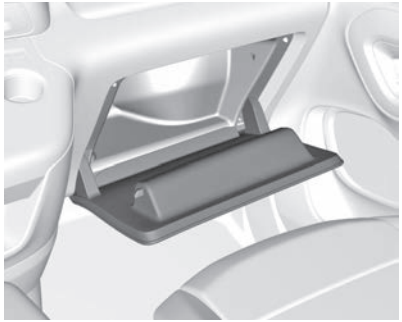
If the blind becomes trapped while moving, reverse its movement. To do this, press the relevant control. When pressing the button to open/ close the blind, the driver must ensure that nothing and no one might interfere with its movement. The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly. Pay particular attention to children when operating the blind.

Interior Features

WARNING

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage areas.

Glove Compartment



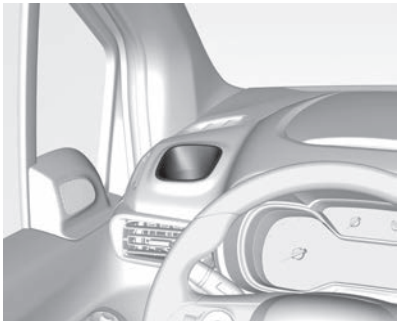
To open the glove-box pull the handle. The glove-box should be closed whilst driving.

NOTE

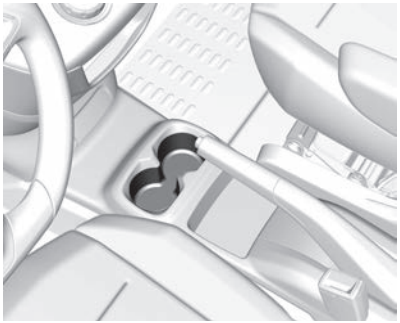
Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is sitting at the front. It may cause injury under sharp deceleration.

Cupholders

Front cupholder

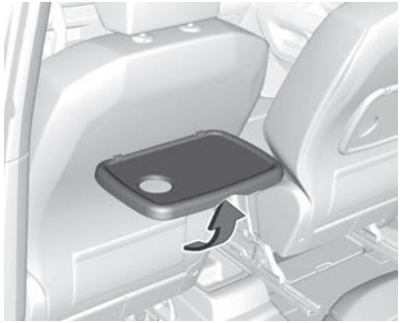


Cup holders are located at the sides of the instrument panel.



Cupholders may be located in the centre console.

Rear cupholder



Additional cup holders may be located in the foldaway tables on the backrests of the front seats. Fold up the table. Do not place any hard or heavy objects on the table.



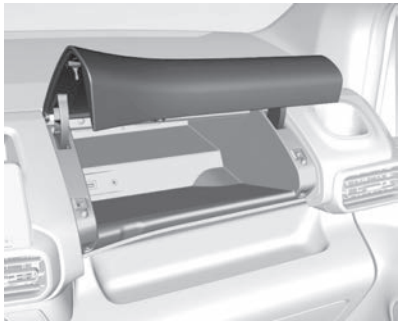
Cupholders for the third row seats are located in the sides of the load compartment.

Center Console Compartment



A storage box may be located in the centre console. Press cover to open. A 12 V power outlet is located behind the storage cover.

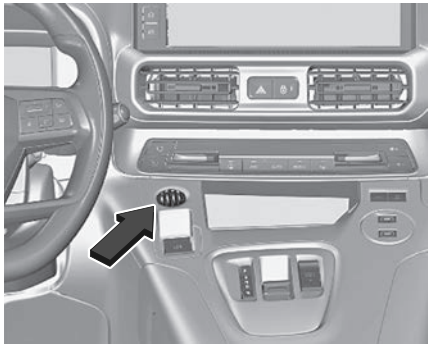
Front storage



A storage compartment is located on top of the instrument panel.



A storage compartment is located above the Instrument cluster.



A coin holder is located on the instrument panel.

Seatback Storage



A storage box is fitted below the front center seat cushion. To access it:

1. Pull the handle to unlatch the seat cushion and lift it to access the storage box.
2. Support the cushion while it is in the open position.

The storage box can be locked by a padlock.

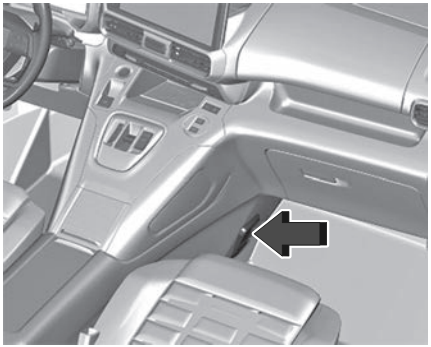
12V Power Outtets



A 12 V power outlet is located behind the storage cover. Push cover upwards to open.
Depending on the version, the 12 V power outlet may be freely accessible.



At the right side of the load compartment, another 12 V power outlet may be located.
Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.



A 230 V power outlet may be located on the lower side of the centre console in the front passenger compartment.
Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 150 W.
With ignition off, the power outlets are deactivated. Additionally the power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.
Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.
Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

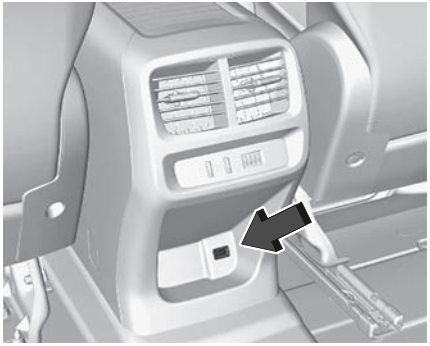
USB Ports

Front USB ports



The USB ports can be used to charge external devices.
Depending on version, a USB port may be used for data exchanging.

Rear USB ports



A further USB port may be located in the rear console.
The USB port can be used to charge external devices.

Symbol	USB port characteristics
	Power supply and recharging.
	Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touchscreen.

Depending on version, a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.
For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer. These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

NOTE

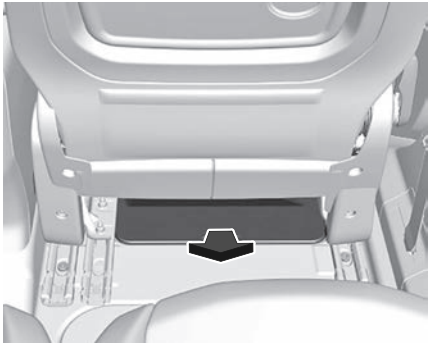
The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

NOTE

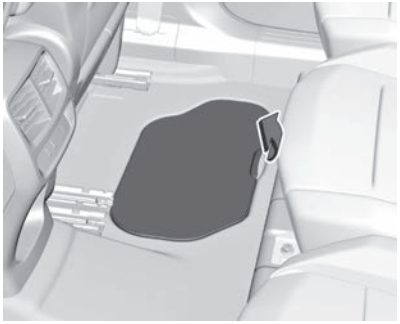
When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Footwell storage

The footwell storages can be accessed from the rear seats.



Vehicle tools may be located in the stowage compartments underneath the front seats

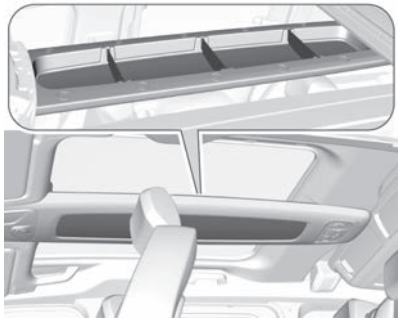


Depending on version, there are two stowage compartments in the rear footwell.

Overhead console



Store only lightweight items such as paperwork or maps.



The separation of the four compartments can be taken out.

The maximum permitted load is **6 kg**.

⚠ CAUTION

Ensure that the fabric is not pressed against the roof.

⚠ WARNING

Secure objects to prevent them from falling out and causing injury.



Slide the flaps to open.

Close whilst driving. The maximum permitted load is **10 kg**.



Pull handle to open.

Close whilst driving. The maximum permitted load is **10 kg**.

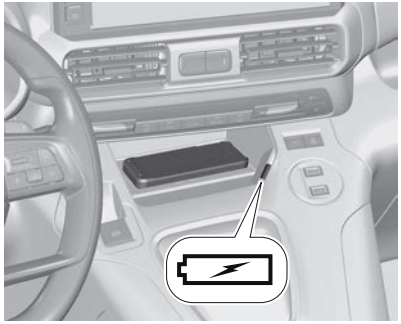
Inductive charging

⚠ WARNING

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

⚠ WARNING

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.



The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard,

either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.
To charge a device, the ignition must be switched on.
To charge a mobile device:

- Remove all objects from the charging device.
- Place the mobile device with the display facing upwards on the charging device in the storage.

⚠ WARNING

The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged
- Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



⚠ WARNING

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Steady green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Steady orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

Charging status is indicated in the LED: illuminates green, when mobile device is charging.
Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.
In the event that the mobile device is not charging properly, rotate it 180° and place it on the charging device again.

Cigarette lighter



The cigarette lighter is freely accessible.
Depending on version, the cigarette lighter may be located behind the storage cover. Press cover to open.
Press in cigarette lighter. It switches off automatically once the element is glowing. Pull out cigarette lighter.

Ashtrays

NOTE

To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

Load compartment



Depending on version, the load compartment area can be increased by folding up or removing the third row seats. The seat backrests of the second row can be folded forward separately. Additionally, the backrest of the passenger seat can be folded.
Depending on the loading, only single seats or backrests can be folded.

For the Extenso Cab and the Crew cab

⚠ WARNING

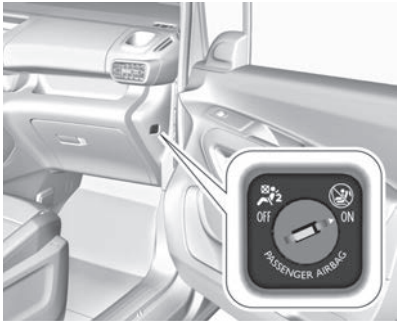
Do not place sharp or pointed objects in the protective cover to avoid damaging it.

⚠ WARNING

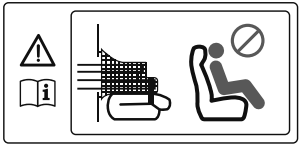
Do not place objects on the dashboard.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when carrying long objects.

For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

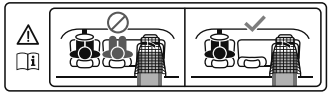


Positioning the Protective Cover



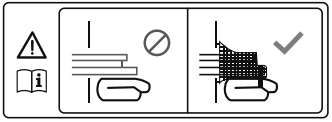
⚠ WARNING

Whenever the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the partition flap is open, the protective cover must be installed.



⚠ WARNING

No passengers must be allowed to sit in the central seat if the backrest of the right-hand outer seat is lowered and the partition flap is open.



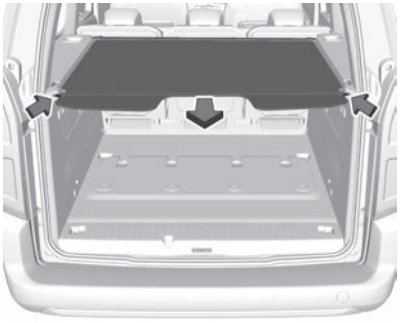
⚠ WARNING

When loading long objects, take care to install the protective cover correctly.
Read the following procedure carefully.

Load Compartment Cover

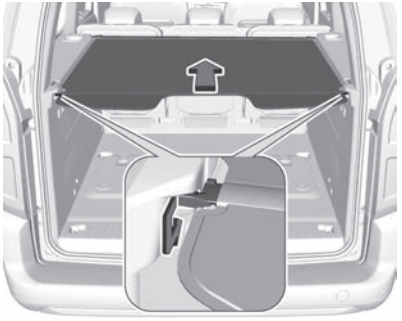
Rear luggage cover.
Do not place any objects on the cover.

Closing the cover



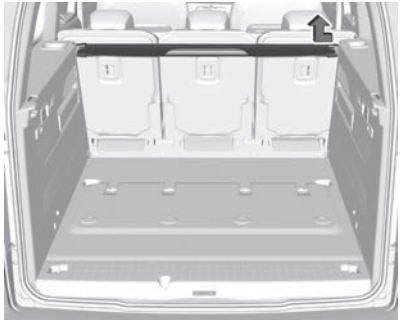
Pull the load compartment cover towards the rear and engage it in the side brackets.

Opening the cover



Remove load compartment cover from side brackets. Guide the cover until it is fully rolled up.

Removing the cover



1. Open the load compartment cover.
2. Compress the load compartment cover at one side and lift it up.
3. Remove the load compartment cover.

Stowing in the load compartment



If the load compartment cover is not used, stow it in the load compartment. It can be stowed behind the second or third row seats.

Fitting the cover

Insert the load compartment cover into the recess at one side. Compress the cover at the other side and engage it in the recess.

Rear Parcel Shelf

Do not place any excessively heavy or sharp-edged objects on the rear parcel shelf.

The maximum load permissible is **25 kg**. With high loads install the safety net behind the rear seats.

Installing the rear parcel shelf



The rear parcel shelf can be installed in two positions.
Fit the parcel shelf by engaging in the retainers on both sides.

Lifting the rear parcel shelf



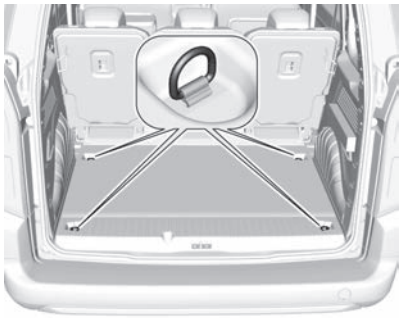
The rear parcel shelf may be folded up from the rear, allowing greater flexibility in the load compartment.

Stowing in the load compartment



Set up the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

Lashing eyes



The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.



Lashing eyes may be located on the vehicle floor and / or in the sidewall. The number and location of the lashing eyes may vary depending on the vehicle.



The maximum force applied to the lashing eyes should not exceed 500 daN / 5 kN / 5000 N.
Depending on country, the maximum force may be shown on a label.

NOTE

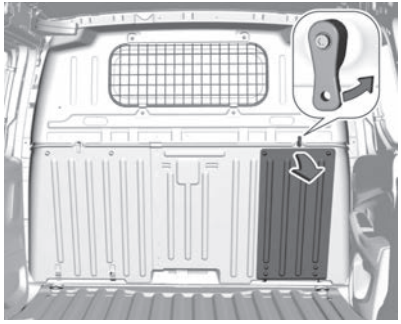
Specifications on the label always have priority over those given in this manual.

Cargo Management System

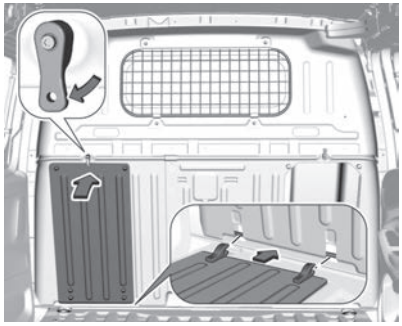
Depending on version, a partition behind the front seats protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.

There may be a flap in the partition behind the passenger seat which can be removed to accommodate long objects. A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to assure safe transportation.
If the outer passenger seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open, the centre seat has to stay free.

Removing the Flap

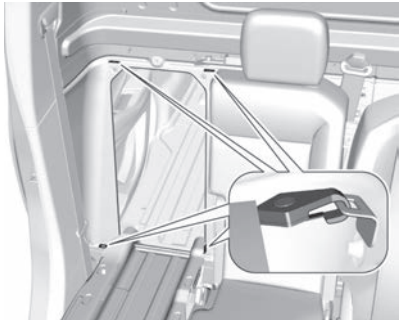


1. Release the locking device, lower the flap and then remove it.
2. Stow the flap behind the driver's seat.



3. Turn the locking device upwards.
4. Put the hinges of the flap in their housing, lift the flap and close the locking device.

Fitting the Protective Cover



1. Attach the four snap hooks of the cover on the corresponding lashing eye.
2. Pull the head restraint from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible on the head restraint rod.
3. Load the objects.



4. Pass the strap of the cover around the head restraint. Tension the strap by pulling at the loose end.

With fitted protective cover the maximum load on the folded backrest is **100 kg**.

Safety net

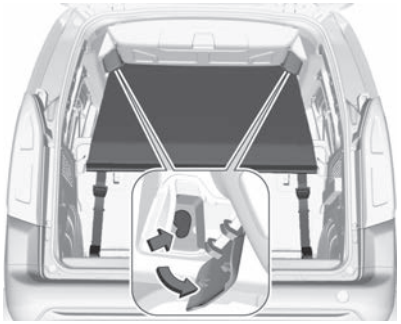
Depending on version, the safety net can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.
Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

⚠ WARNING

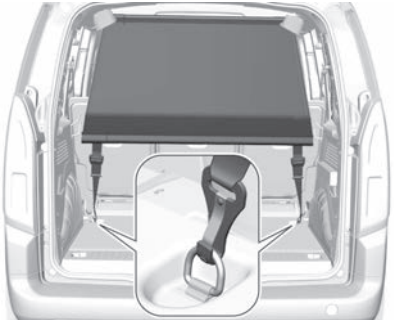
Never use the ISOFIX ring, which is for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

Installation

Behind the rear seats



1. There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats. Open the covers and suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.

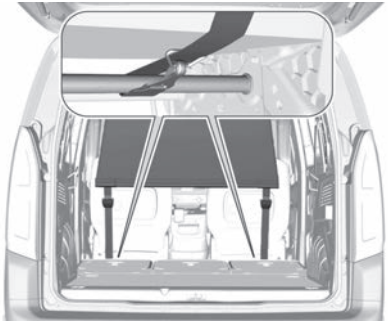


2. Attach the hooks of safety net straps in the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
   Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
3. Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

Behind the Front Seats



1. There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats. Open the covers and suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



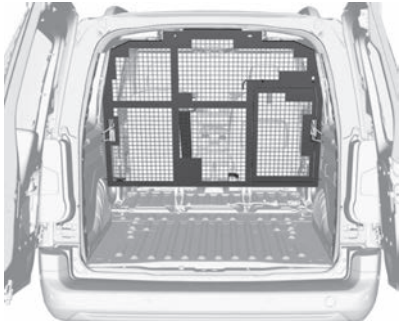
2. Wind one strap around the bar located under the front driver seat cushion. The other one wind around the bar of the passenger seat. Then secure each hook to the corresponding strap.
   Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
3. Push down head restraints and fold down rear seat backrests.

First aid kit



Depending on version, the first aid kit can be stowed in the load compartment.

Load compartment grille



Depending on version a partition protects the driver and passengers against the risk of load movement.



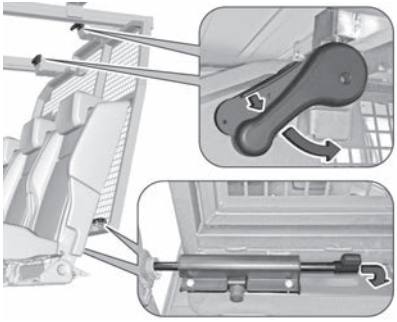
The partition can be placed behind the front or rear seats.



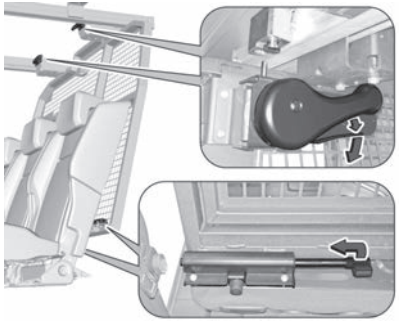
There is a flap in the partition which can be opened to accommodate long

objects. A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to assure safe transportation.
If the side seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open the centre seat has to stay free.
If the backrest of the rear seat is lowered and the flap open to transport long objects, the front passenger seat has to stay free.

Moving the Partition



1. Release the four locking devices on the top and the bottom of the partition.
2. To be placed behind the front seats fold down the rear seat backrests



3. Move the partition and lock the four locking devices on the top and the bottom.

⚠ WARNING

Take care when operating the bottom locking devices. Risk of pinching.

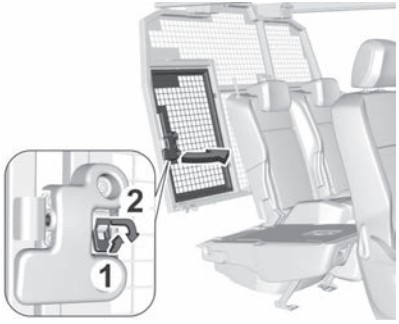
Opening the Flap

⚠ WARNING

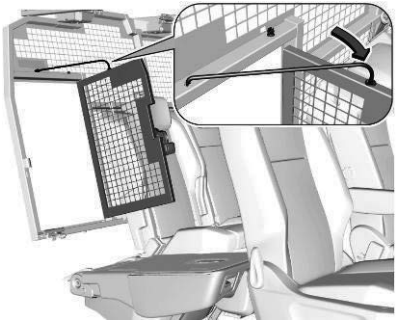
Avoid placing loads on the sill bar of the hatch **E**. Whenever possible, place loads on the folded-down seat backrests.

The maximum load on the sill of the hatch **E** is: **20 kg**.

1. Depending on the positioning of the partition and the length of the load fold down the outer rear seat backrest and / or passenger seat backrest.



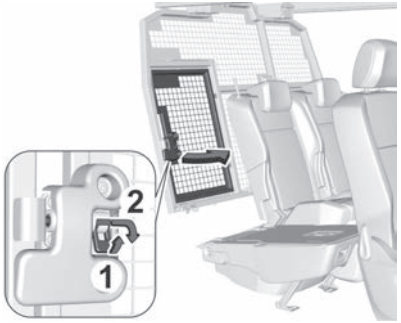
2. Release the locking device of the flap and open the flap.



3. Secure the flap with the rod.

Closing the Flap

1. Fix the rod in the bracket.



2. Close the flap and lock the locking device.
3. Restore the seats to the upright position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place loads behind the partition positioned behind row 2, if the backrest of part 2/3 of the bench seat is folded down.

ⓘ NOTE

Avoid placing heavy loads on the folded-down backrest of row 1. Whenever possible, place heavy loads on the floor.

The maximum load permitted on each of the folded backrests of row 2 is: **80 kg**.

Fitting the Protective Cover

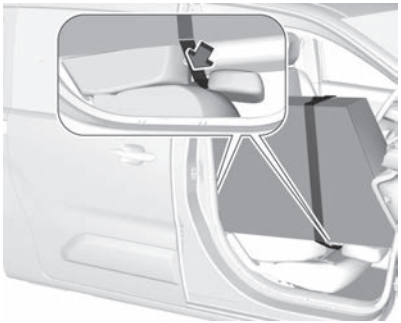
The protective cover must be installed whenever the side seat backrest is folded down and the partition flap is open.



1. Attach the four snap hooks of the cover on the corresponding lashing eye.
2. Pull the head restraint from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible on the head restraint rod.
3. Load the objects.



4. Pass the strap of the cover around the head restraint. Tension the strap by pulling at the loose end.



5. If the loading is stored on the front and rear seat at the passenger side pass one strap on each head restraint.

   With fitted protective cover the maximum load on each of the folded backrests is **100 kg**.

Smart Compact Van Features

SCV

Drivedrawer

A storage drawer is provided under the driver's seat.

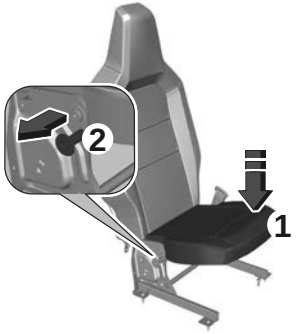


Use the storage drawer as follows:

1. Lift the drawer to unlock it.
2. Slide the drawer to the fully forward position.
3. Slide the drawer to the fully aft position, then lock the drawer.

Flexiseat

Folding



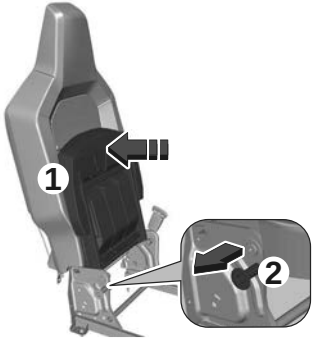
1. Push down and hold the edge (**1**) of the seat and pull the yellow handle (**2**) to release the lock.



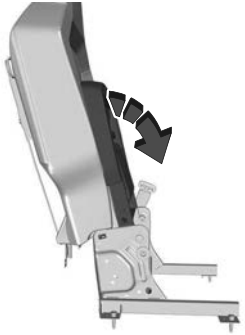
2. With the handle (**2**) still pulled, fold the seat against the backrest.
3. Release the yellow handle (**2**) to lock the seat and check for proper locking.

> **NOTE**
>
> To check whether the seat is fully locked, ensure that the yellow handle (**2**) is all the way in.

Unfolding



1. Press the edge (**1**) of the seat against the backrest and pull the yellow handle (**2**) to release the lock.

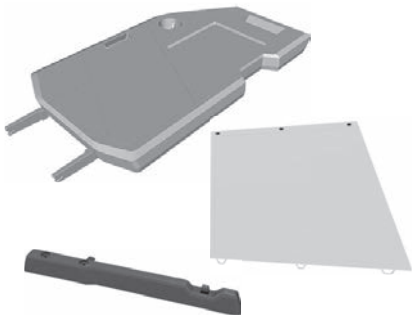


2. With the handle (**2**) still pulled, push the seat down.
3. Release the yellow handle (**2**) to lock the seat and check for proper locking.

> **NOTE**
>
> To check whether the seat is fully locked, ensure that the yellow handle (**2**) is all the way in.

Modutable

The modutable feature comprises a set of accessories designed to meet the needs of the customer that require flexible cabin configurations, enabling a quick transition between cargo transport and passenger transport modes.



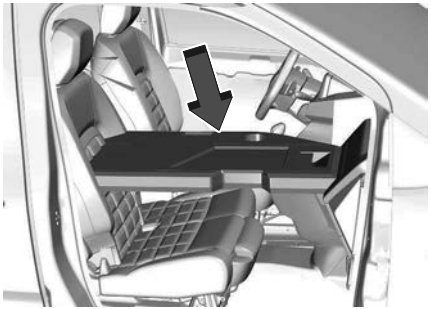
The modutable includes:

- a passenger seat-mounted table with sliding board on upper part and cup holder
- a fabric divider to divide the driver area from the front passenger one
- a support bracket for the fabric divider installation

The modutable is stored in a flexi-bag inside the load compartment area (attached to the bulkhead).

Passenger Side Table

The table is equipped with a cup holder and a sliding central section which can allow the driver to eat or perform other activities (e.g., using a laptop computer).



⚠ CAUTION

The maximum load capacity for the passenger seat-mounted table is 20 Kg.

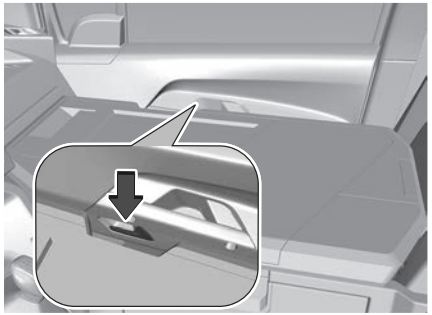
⚠ CAUTION

The maximum load capacity for the sliding central section is 4 Kg.

Be careful not to exceed the weight limit indicated on the safety labels attached to the table.

ⓘ NOTE

In case of impact where the driver's door cannot be opened, the modutable allows access to the passenger door handle to allow exiting the vehicle.



Installation

⚠ DANGER

Before installing the passenger seat-mounted table ensure the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

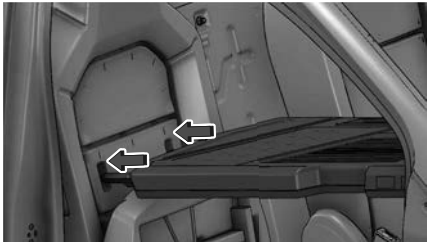
Refer to page ⇨48 on how to deactivate the front passenger airbag.

ⓘ NOTE

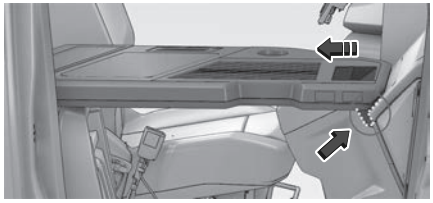
The modutable must be installed with the seat in the closed (folded)

position and keep folded during the driving.
Ensure that the seat is fully folded and secured before starting the installation to allow proper access to the mounting points and prevent interference during assembly.

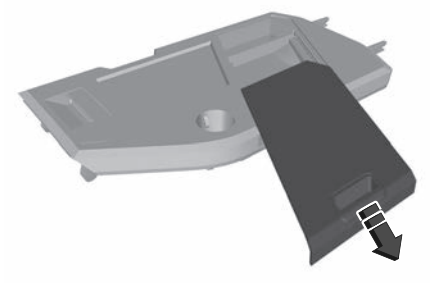
1. Access the load compartment.
2. Retrieve the flexibag.
3. Open the flexibag and take out the modutable.
4. Access the front passenger side.



5. Insert the two pins into the corresponding holes in the passenger seat backrest.



6. Pull the handle towards the rear and lower the front of the table onto the dashboard.
7. Release the handle and check for secure fit.



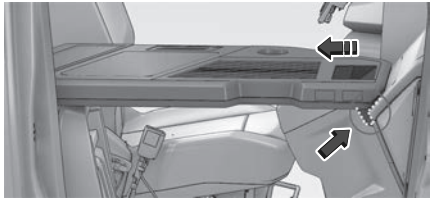
8. If case of need, is possible to slide out the central section.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not apply excessive force during installation. If resistance is encountered, check the alignment of the guides and locking features before continuing.

Removal and Stowage

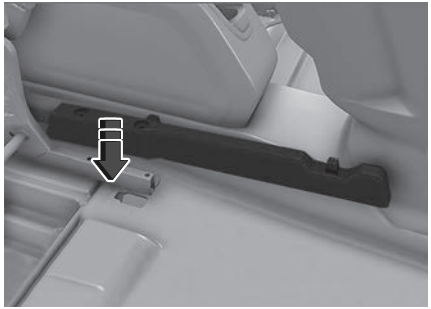
1. Acces the front passenger side.



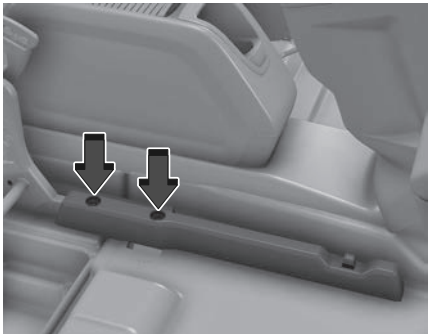
2. Pull the lever rearwards to unlock the modutable.
3. Lift the front end of the modutable and pull it out from the passenger seat backrest.
4. Store the table in the flexibag provided.
5. Store the flexibag in the cargo area.

Fabric Divider

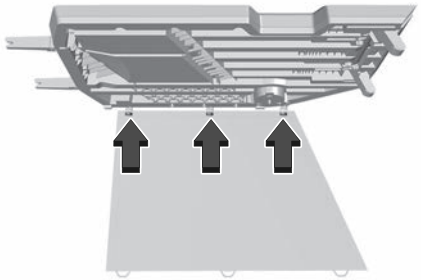
Fabric divider between front seats to create a loading area at the front passenger seat.
To install the fabric divider:



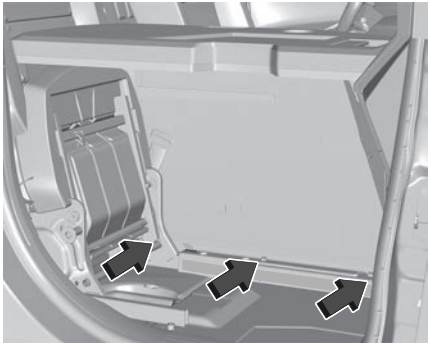
1. Retrieve the side support bracket from the modutable bag and position it in the designated location inside the vehicle.



2. Align the bracket mounting holes with the corresponding vehicle attachment points.
3. Ensure that the front end of the bracket is properly engaged with the tubular guide.
4. Install the provided allen screws. Do not overtighten.



4. Retrieve the passenger side table and engage the hooks located underneath it with the rigid rings of the short side of the fabric divider.
5. Install the passenger side table with the fabric divider hooked (Refer to page ⇨88).

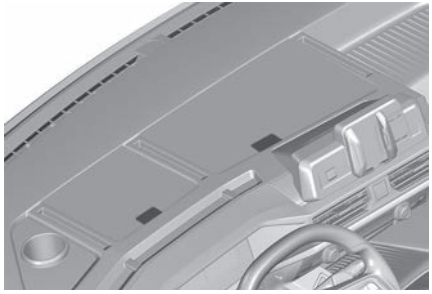


6. Engage the elastics of the long side of the fabric divider to the support bracket hooks.

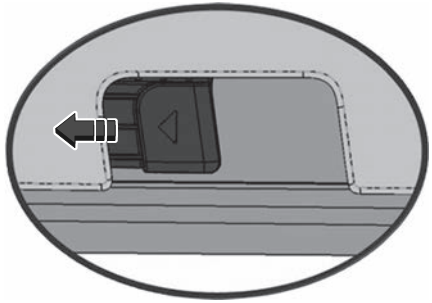
To remove the fabric divider, follow the previous steps in reverse order.

Dashbox

The dashbox features two enclosed storage spaces and a cupholder located on top of the dashboard, a large one in the center of the dashboard and a smaller one in front of the driver.



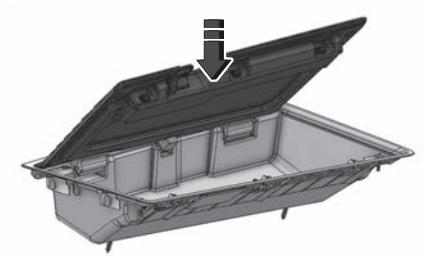
Opening



1. Push and hold the locking tab to the left.
2. Open the lid while keeping the locking tab open.

> **NOTE**
>
> The lid will not stay opened by itself.

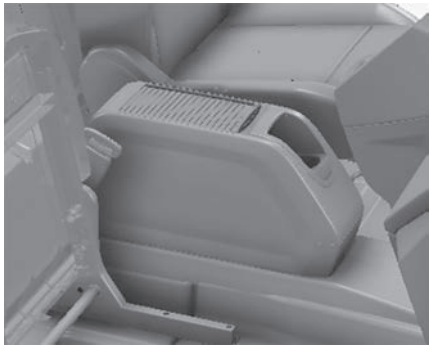
Closing



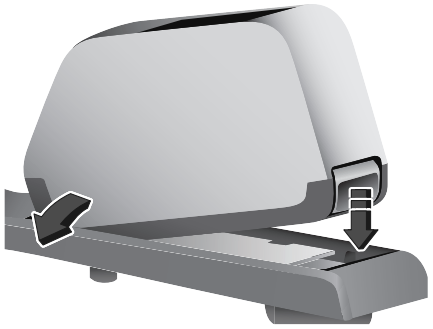
1. Lower the lid.
2. Press gently until the latch engages.

Moduconsole

The moduconsole is a big storage compartment located between the driver and passenger seat.

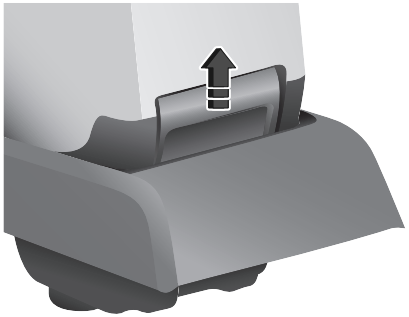


Installation

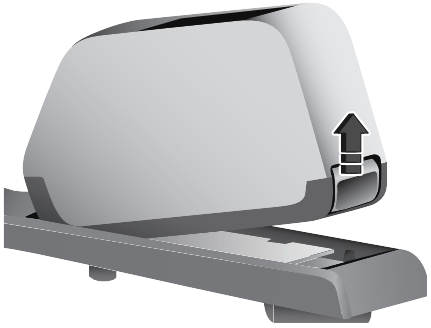


1. Insert the front of the moduconsole into the front attachment point.
2. Lower the rear of the box and press gently until the latch locks.
3. Check for secure fit.

Removal



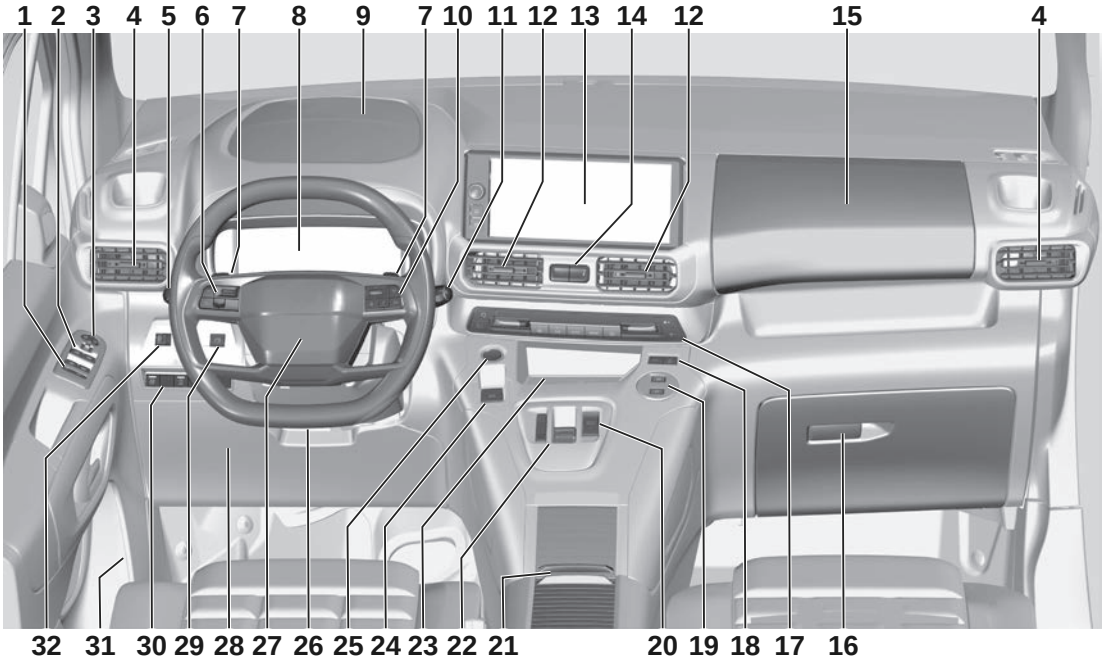
1. Pull the handle to unlock the latch.

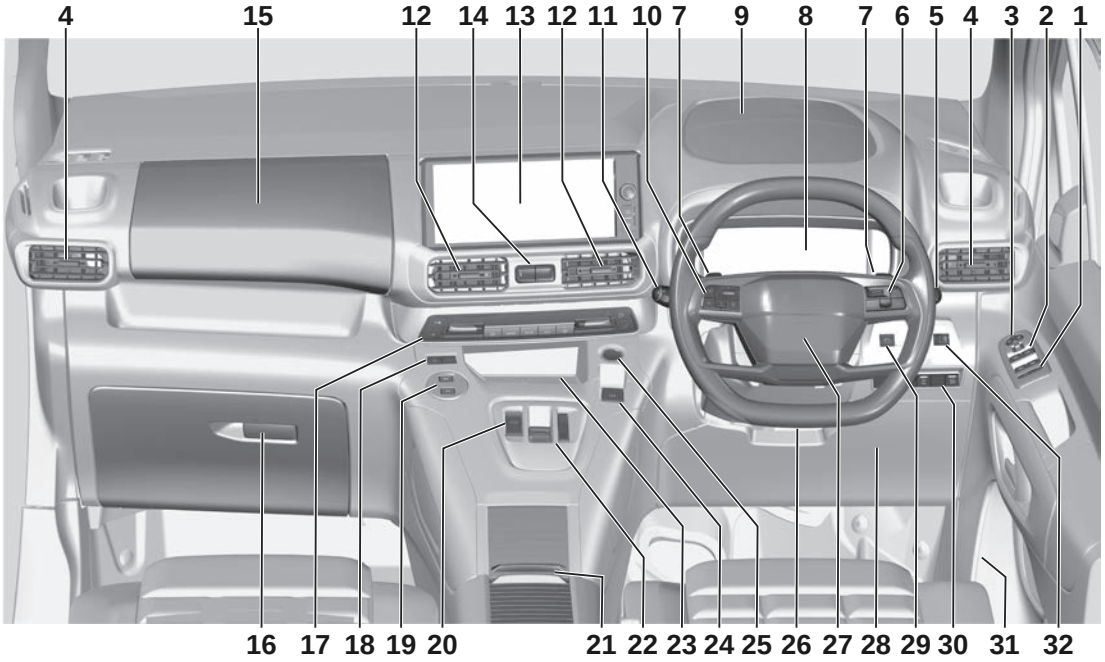


2. Lift the rear of the moduconsole and pull it out of its mounting.

DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL

Instrument Panel Overview





1 Tailgate unlock, Child safety system for rear windows

2 Power windows

3 Exterior mirrors

4 Side air vents

5 External Lighting control stalk

6 Cruise control, Speed Limiter, Adaptive Cruise Control

7 Automatic gearbox control paddle, Control paddles for regenerative braking (BEV)

8 Instrument cluster

9 Storage

10 Infotainment controls

11 Wiper and Washer control stalk

12 Air vents

13 Infotainment display

14 Hazard warning lights, Central locking

15 Storage

16 Glovebox

17 Climate controls

18 Eco mode, Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control

19 USB ports

20 Drive modes, selective ride control

21 Storage, Induction charger

22 Drive Selector

23 Induction charger

24 Electric Parking Brake

25 Start/Stop button, Ignition switch

26 Steering wheel adjustment

27 Horn

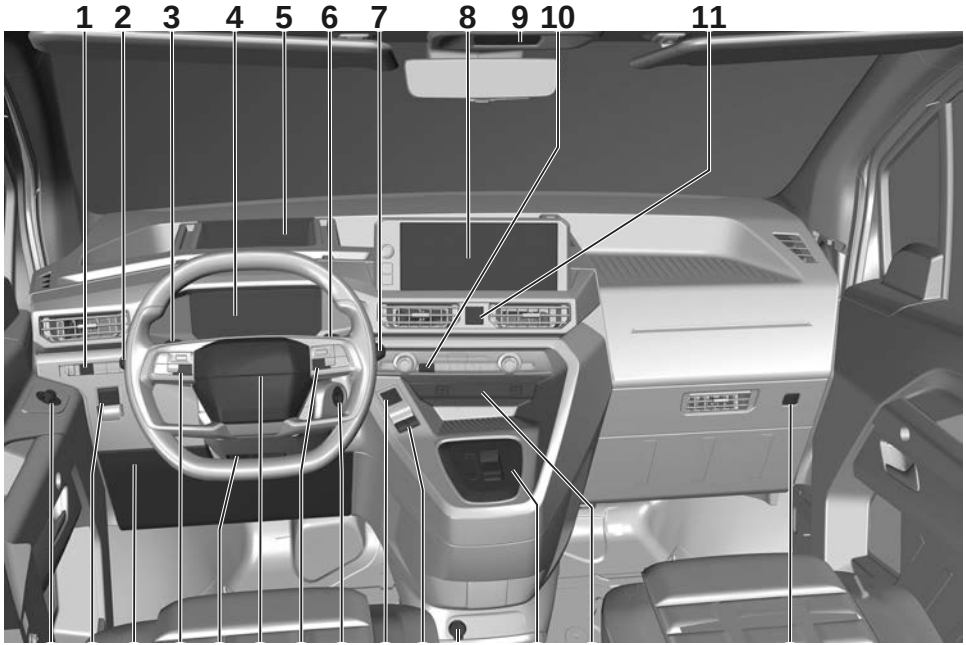
28 Storage

29 Cluster page switch button

30 Lane Keep Assist, Stop & Start system, Heated Steering Wheel, Electric Child locks, Heated windscreen, Tire Pressure Monitoring System, Parking Heater, Temperature preconditioning, Key OFF mode, Side Blind Spot Alert, Parking Assist

31 Hood release

32 Instrument lighting


1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12



1 Side Controls Bar

2 Lighting Control Stalk

3 Left Steering Wheel Paddle (-)

4 Instrument Cluster

5 Front Storage

6 Right Steering Wheel Paddle (+)

7 Wipers and Washers control stalk

8 Infotainment Display

9 Airbag and seatbelt lights, SOS and Assist buttons, Interior mirror

10 Center controls bar

11 Hazard Warning lights

12 Airbag deactivation switch

13 USB ports

14 Gear lever, Drive selector

15 12V and 220V power sockets

16 Electric Windows

17 Central Locking control

18 Start/Stop button, Switch Ignition

19 Infotainment controls

20 Horn

21 Steering Wheel Adjustment

22 Advanced Driving Assistance Systems controls

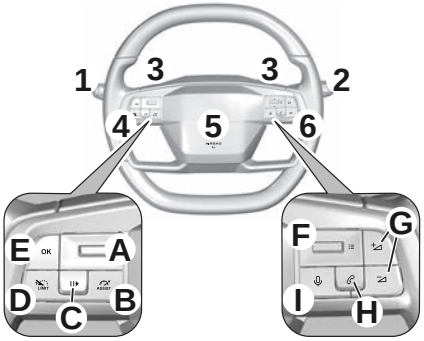
23 Fuze box

24 Electric Parking Brake

25 Door mirror controls

Steering Wheel Controls

Some driver assistance systems, the Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.



1 External lighting controls

2 Wiper controls / Screenwash / Trip computer (pop-up window)

3 Automatic gearbox control paddles/Deceleration level selection (BEV)

4 Advanced Driver Assistance Systems controls

5 Horn/Driver front airbag

6 Audio system controls

A Increase/Decrease the speed setting/Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front (Adaptive Cruise Control)

B Select/Deselect the Cruise Control function

C Start/Pause of the Speed limiter or Cruise Control with the speed setting saved Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (Adaptive Cruise Control with Stop&Go function)

D Select/Deselect the Speed Limiter function

E Activation of the Speed limiter or Cruise Control with the saved speed setting/Use the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition system

F Menu navigation (Up/Down/Select)

G Decrease/Increase volume/Mute function

H Access the Phone menu, Manage calls
Smartphone selection

I Voice commands

Side Control Bar

Depending on version



1 Lane Keeping Assist off (Press and Hold)

2 Auto

3 Temperature Preconditioning

4 Electric Child Locks

5 Steering Wheel Heating

6 Windshield Heating

7 KEY OFF mode

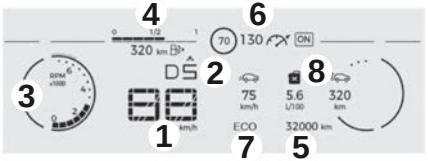
Instrument Cluster

Depending on the version, different instrument clusters are available.
In addition to warning lights, gauges and indicators, the following information is available:

- trip odometer
- gear shift indication
- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance messages
- pop-up messages
- infotainment information

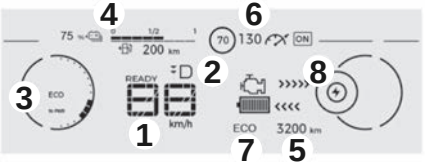
ICE





BEV





1 Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)

2 Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox

Drive selector position (BEV)
Gear change indicator (ICE)
Driving mode selected

3 Customizable area. Different pages can be displayed.

4 Fuel gauge (ICE)

Charge level indicator (BEV)
Remaining range (miles or km)

5 Total distance recorder (miles or km)

6 Cruise control or speed limiter settings

Display of recognised signs
Indication of danger zones (with connected navigation)

7 Drive mode selected

8 Personalisation and setting area

Different pages can be displayed

Gear indicator

▼ or ▲ with with the number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Pages



Press the button to scroll through several on-board pages or to close a pop-up message.
The pages available are:

- Date/Time/Temperature
- Onboard Computer
- Coolant Termperature (ICE)
- AdBlue® (Diesel)
- Thermal Consumption (BEV)
- Energy Flow (BEV)

Personalisation

The Instrument Cluster can be personalized via the menu in the Info Display.



Several pages can be created by choosing widgets to be displayed.

Widgets

A widget is the indication of specific information or gauge, e.g. radio information, navigation information or the engine coolant temperature gauge.



The Cluster can display one widget per page, the Touchscreen Display can contain several widgets.
To add a widget to a page, touch ⊞.

Some widgets are available in different sizes. The bigger a widget is, the less widgets can be displayed on a page.

Odometer

The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

Fuel level gauge

Control indicator • or ⛽ illuminates yellow if the fuel level is low.
Never run the fuel tank dry.
The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler flap is located.
The top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity, due to the remaining fuel in the tank.

Type A



Type B



Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Type A



Type B



Power Meter

The power indicator gauge informs about the current energy situation of the vehicle.

Charge : High voltage battery is being charged with energy resulting from braking or deceleration of the vehicle.

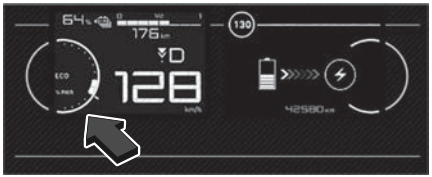
Eco : An optimum in energy is accessible in all driving modes.

Power : Vehicle is driven in a dynamic driving style with focus on performance.

Type A



Type B



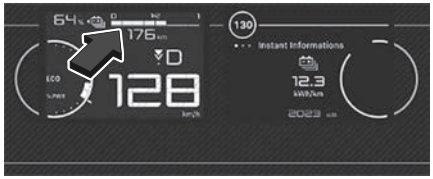
High-voltage battery charge status

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge.

Type A



Type B



Trip computer

The trip computer displays current trip information since the last reset.



Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:
Current information:

- Total range
- Current consumption
- Instantaneous elec consumption
- Autonomy in km (BEV)
- Time counter for the Stop & Start Mode

Trips "**1**" then "**2**":

- Average consumption
- Average speed.
- Distance travelled.

The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.
To reset a trip, press the button for more than two seconds when the desired trip is displayed.

Type A



Type B



Trip reset

To reset the values for both trips:

1. Short press the control to scroll to **range display page 1**, then press and hold the control to reset the corresponding trip value to **0**;
2. Short press the control to scroll to **range display page 2**, then press and hold the control to reset the corresponding trip value to **0**.

On BEV vehicles, with the battery level above 95%, resetting both trips within 30 seconds will reset the Triple Range Display ⇨ 102

Definitions

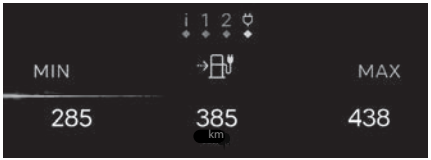
Metric	Unit	Definition
Range	miles (km)	Remaining range before the battery or fuel tank is empty.
Current Con-sumption	miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh (BEV) Mpg or L/100km (Hybrid 48V)	Instantaneous energy/fuel usage. Only dis-played at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).
Average Con-sumption	miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh (BEV) Mpg (L/100 km) (Hybrid 48V)	Aggregate average energy/fuel usage since the last Trip Computer reset.
Average Speed	Mph (km/h)	Aggregate average speed since the last Trip Computer reset.
Distance Travelled	Miles (km)	Aggregate distance since the last Trip Computer Reset

Range Display (BEV)

The cluster can display multiple range values which are calculated using different algorithms to give the driver the best information regarding the management of the vehicle's remaining energy. Two of these values are calculated using the **WLTP** method : **Min** and **Max** range

The **WLTP** (Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure) test is the global standard used to measure fuel consumption, range (for electric vehicles), and exhaust emissions of cars under ideal conditions (23°C, thermal comfort off, average speed of 46 km/h in a combined cycle).

Triple Range Display



The range widget shows three values:

MIN	Worst case scenario with high energy consumption (highway driving in low temperatures).
Main Range	Estimated range using the average energy consumption from previous trips. Also permanently shown on the cluster.
MAX	Best case scenario with minimum energy consumption. (WLTP Range)

After a Trip Computer Reset, the **Main Range** will match the **Max** value until energy consumption values are calculated again. ⇨ 101

These values provide an estimate of the overall range of the vehicle depending on the remaining charge level.

The widget can be selected from the relevant sub-menu page by using the

controls on the **wiper stalk** to scroll through the available widgets. Depending on vehicle configuration, it can remain permanently displayed.

NOTE

When towing a trailer or caravan with the electrical connection activated, the displayed WLTP range may be significantly reduced. In some conditions, the actual range may be one third of the WLTP reference range or less.

NOTE

Actual driving range may vary significantly depending on driving style and external conditions.
Minimising heavy accelerations and braking and using climate control functions sparingly will improve driving range.

Energy flow

This menu displays the current energy flow within the electric system.
The components will be highlighted when they are active.

To access with **Type 1 Touchscreen:**

1. Press ⌂
2. Touch ⚡
3. Select Energy Flow.

Different colors show which engine is used and whether energy is regenerated.

- green: regenerating energy
- blue: electric engine operating

NOTE

For vehicles with **Type 2 Touchscreen** and Smartphone Station, this menu can only be used via the MyOpel App.

Warning lights, gauges and indicators

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes. If no number: for information only.
If a red or orange warning light comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

Overview

The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

(1) only for information.

(2) information and warning

(3) seek the assistance of a workshop

(4) stop engine, leave vehicle and seek the assistance of a workshop

(5) have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

Red warning and indicator lights

STOP



Steady, associated with another warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

A serious failure with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical failure has been detected.

Carry out (4)

Traction battery overheating (BEV)



Steady, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The traction battery's temperature is too high.
Carry out (4).

Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

Traction battery fault (BEV)



Steady, combined with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.
The traction battery has a failure.
Carry out (5).

System fault (BEV)



Steady.
The system has encountered a fault.
Carry out (4).

Cable connected (BEV)



Steady when the ignition is switched on.

The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.



Steady when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle’s connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

Maximum Coolant Temperature



Steady.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Carry out (4), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (5).

Engine oil pressure (ICE)



Steady.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system (5).

Braking



Steady.

The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.
Carry out (4), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (5).



Steady.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is failure.



Carry out (4).

Manual Parking Brake



Steady.
The Parking Brake is applied or not properly released.

Electric parking brake



Steady.



Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (4): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox. Switch off the ignition and carry out (5).

12 V battery charge



Steady.

The battery charging circuit is failure (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).
Carry out (4).

If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilize the vehicle:

- Fit the chock against one of the wheels. Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning light does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (5).

Power steering



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal. The power steering has a fault.

Carry out (3)

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Steady or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audio signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Door(s) open



Steady, associated with a message identifying the access.

An audio signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
A door or the trunk is not properly closed.

Orange warning and indicator lights

Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning light(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tire underinflation detection system, carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning light(s),

have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".

Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Audible Warning System fault: Repair needed** ".

The audible warning system has a fault. The following driving aids may be disturbed or unavailable:

- Road signs recognition.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.

Carry out (5).
For more information, refer to the **Service Indicator** section. ⇨ 112

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)



Steady.
A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

1. Start the engine.
2. Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
3. Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
4. Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
5. Release the control.
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
8. Release the control and the brake pedal.

Electric parking brake fault



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".



The vehicle cannot be immobilized with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is failure.

The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a failure with the control.
Carry out (2).



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".



The electric parking brake is failure: manual and automatic functions may not be working.



When stationary, to immobilize the vehicle:

- Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator light lights up on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- Park on a level surface.
- Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (2).

Low fuel level (ICE)



Flashing.

(2)

Low traction battery level (BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal.
The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

View the remaining range.
Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (Electric)



Steady.
The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.

The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.
If the warning light remains lit, carry out (2).

Pedestrian horn (BEV)



Steady.
Horn failure detected.
Carry out (3).

Engine preheating (Diesel)



Steady temporarily (up to 30sec in severe weather conditions)
(1)

When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.
Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Water in fuel filter (Diesel)



Flashing.

(2)

Particle filter (Diesel)



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.

The particle filter is nearing saturation. As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed of above 2,500 rpm, until the warning lamp goes off.



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.

The low level in the additive tank has been reached. Top up without delay: carry out (5).

AdBlue® (Diesel)



On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).

Top up the AdBlue®.



Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®.



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**.



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®.
It is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR Emissions control system (Diesel)

Engine self-diagnostics system (ICE)



Flashing.
The engine management system has a failure.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out **(5)**.



Fixed.

The emissions control system has a failure.
The warning light should go off when the engine is started.



Fixed.
A minor engine failure has been detected.





Fixed.



A major engine failure has been detected.

Under-inflation



Steady.
The pressure in one or more tires is too low.

Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.
Reinitialize the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning light flashing then steady and Service warning light steady.



The tire pressure monitoring system is failure.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Parking sensors



Flashing.
The system detects an obstacle.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.

The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual** ".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front and/or rear sensors.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Steady.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Braking



Steady.
A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.

Drive carefully.
Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

For more information, refer to the **Starting&Operating** section.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the touch screen.



Steady, accompanied by a message and an audio signal.
The system has a failure.
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.





Steady.
The system has a failure.
If these warning lights come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).





Steady.
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Power steering



Steady.
A minor failure in the power steering has been detected.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/ Anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Steady.
The system is deactivated.

The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.



Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Steady.
The DSC/ASR system has a failure.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake failure (with electric parking brake)



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".



Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Traffic sign recognition



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
The system has a failure.
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Lane keeping assist



Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

For more information, refer to the **Starting&Operating** section.



Steady.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Clean the front camera.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
The system has a failure.
Carry out (3).

Airbags



Dispay of a message.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is failure.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)



Steady.

The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is set to the "**ON**" position.

In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Steady.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is set to the **"OFF"** position.

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a failure with the airbags (Airbags warning light on).

Stop & Start (OFF)



Steady.

Driver Attention Warning



Steady.
The system is deactivated.



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
The system has a failure.
Carry out (3).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message **Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor, see User Manual**.

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Automatic headlight dipping



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal and a message.
A function or camera failure is detected.
Carry out (2).

Rear foglights



Steady.
The lights are on.

Green warning and indicator lights

Vehicle ready to drive (BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audio signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive.

The indicator light goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.

The light will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

Hill Assist Descent Control



Steady
The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).



Flashing. The function is regulating the speed of the vehicle. The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.

Direction indicators



Flashing with audio signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Daytime running lights/Sidelights



Steady.
With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lights are on.

With inadequate ambient light, the sidelights are on.

Dipped beam headlights



Steady.
The lights are on.

Automatic headlight dipping



Steady.
The function is activated via the touch screen.



The lighting control stalk ring is in the “**AUTO**” position.

Blue warning and indicator lights

Main beam headlights



Steady.

Black/white warning and indicator lights

Hill Assist Descent Control



Steady
The function has been activated, but is currently paused because the speed is too high. Reduce the vehicle speed to below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and/or time (months or days).
The alert is triggered when either the distance or time limit is reached, whichever comes first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the

period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

NOTE

The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.
In accordance with the vehicle's maintenance plan, the service may consist of either:

- A yearly visit.
- A complete service.

Service wrench



On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.



steady, when the ignition is switched on.

The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days.
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service wrench flashing



Flashing then steady, when the ignition is switched on.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Reminder of the servicing information



Servicing information is accessible using the **Settings > Vehicle** application on the touch screen.

- Then select **Safety > Diagnostics**.

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Tire pressures.
- Engine oil level (depending on engine).
- Next service due.
- Current alerts.

NOTE

This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Thermal comfort consumption indicator

It is available in the display pages of the instrument panel.
The indicator shows the consumption of the traction battery electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment.
The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.
This equipment can be used:

- If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** light is lit.
- If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).

Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment.

NOTE

To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.
Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment, particularly at low speed, can significantly decrease the vehicle's range.
Remember to optimise equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.
After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odour during the first few minutes of use.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

Displays the coolant temperature.
The red zone indicates that the operating temperature of the engine is too high.

NOTE

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

Type A



Type B



Tachometer

Displays the engine speed.
Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

CAUTION

If the indicator is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine can be damaged.

Type A



Type B



Comfort consumption gauge

The comfort consumption gauge informs about the current electric consumption caused by the following thermal consumers:

- heating

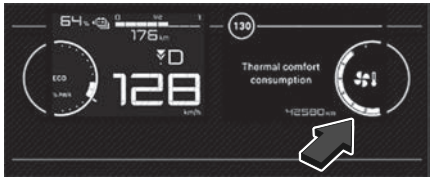
- air conditioning
- heated windscreen
- heated rear window
- heated seats

If the drive mode Eco mode is selected, the performance of the thermal consumers is reduced.

Type A



Type B



Engine oil level monitor

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the cluster for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition.

A proper state of engine oil level is confirmed.
If engine oil level is low, flashes and warning message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.
Depending on the version, OIL flashes in the Driver Information Centre. Confirm engine oil level by using the oil dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.
A fault of measurement is indicated by OIL or a message in the Driver Information Centre together with .
Check engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.

Climate controls

AC On-Off Control



Controls for:

- **A/C** to switch on cooling.

  A/C again to switch off cooling.
- temperature
- , and air distribution
- fan speed
- air recirculation
- REAR heated rear window and exterior mirrors
- heated seats

Contains R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases

Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system may contain R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases.

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning to the desired temperature.

HI	warm
LO	cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

Towindshield and front door windows

To head area via adjustable air vents

To foot and windshield

All combinations are possible.

Fan speed



Adjust the air flow by turning to the desired speed.

clockwise	increase
anticlockwise	decreasecold

Cooling A/C



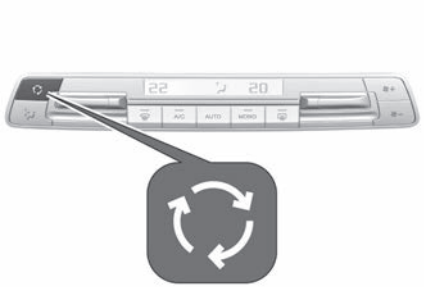
Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.
If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops (Stop & Start).

Air recirculation system



Press ◌ to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
Press ◌ again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ WARNING

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode.
In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside.
The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may

cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Demisting and defrosting

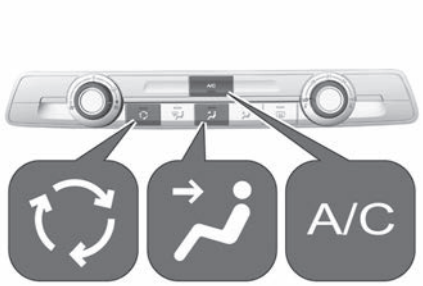


- Press the air distribution is directed towards the windshield.
- Set temperature controller to warmest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .

- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Switch off demisting/de-icing as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as decreased power consumption in turn reduces energy consumption. Demisting/de-icing only operates with the engine running.

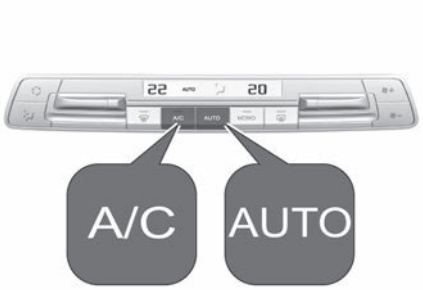
Maximum AC On-Off Control



Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on cooling A/C.
- Press for air recirculation system on.
- Press for air distribution.
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Automatic AC Control



Basic setting for maximum comfort:

1. Press AUTO, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
2. Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
3. Air conditioning must be activated for optimal cooling and demisting. Press A/C to switch on air condition-

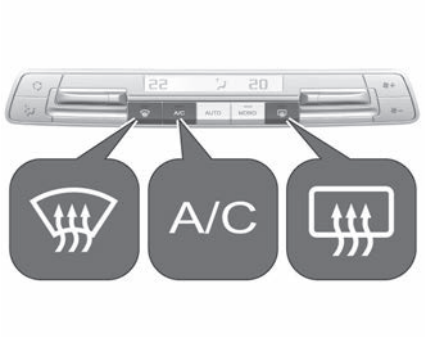
ing. The LED in the button indicates activation.

4. Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary ring. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

Press successively AUTO to select the desired automatic settings:

1. Soft Auto for a soft and silent air distribution.
2. Auto for thermal comfort and silent air distribution.
3. Auto Fast for a dynamic and efficient air distribution.

Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control

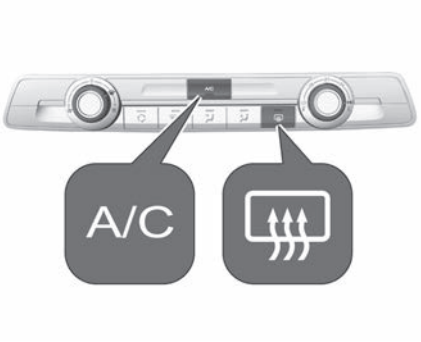


- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Air conditioning and automatic mode are automatically switched on. The LED in the button A/C illuminates, AUTO is shown in the display.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.

NOTE

If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop (Stop & Start) will be inhibited until is pressed again.
If is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop (Stop & Start) , the engine will restart automatically

Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control



- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature controller to warmest level.
- Switch on cooling A/C, if required.
- Switch on heated rear window REAR.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door window

NOTE

If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected, an Autostop may be inhibited.

If the settings for demisting and defrosting are selected while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Temperature Control

Adjust the temperature by turning to the desired temperature.

HI	warm
LO	cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air Fan Speed Control

Adjust the air flow by turning to the desired speed.

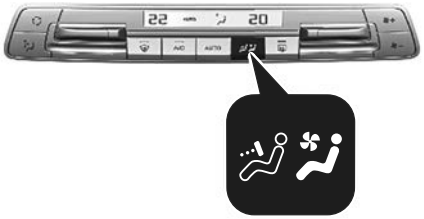
clockwise	increase
anticlockwise	decreasecold

Air vents

⚠ WARNING

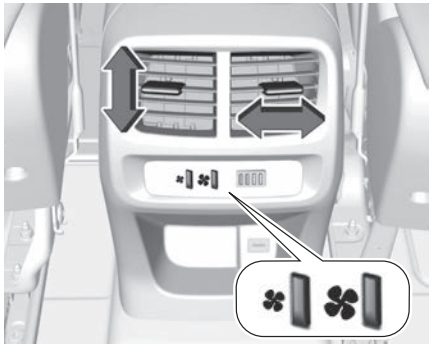
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Rear air vents in the centre console

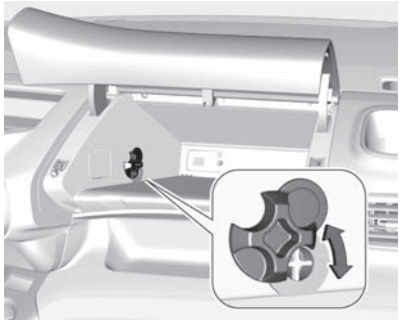


To activate the distribution of climatised / heated air via the rear air vents, press .





Air vent in the glovebox



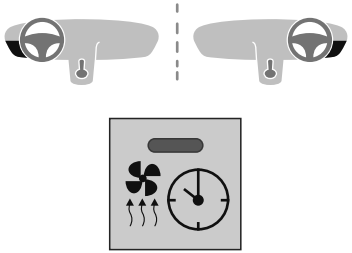
Turn the slider up or down in order to close or open the air vent.

Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, the door windows and in the foot wells.

Temperature Preconditioning

This function allows you to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 70 °F [21 °C]) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.



The operating status of the temperature preconditioning is shown by an indicator with an LED.

- LED illuminates: A timer has been set.
- LED flashes: The system is operating.

The LED is extinguished at the end of the heating /ventilation operation or when the temperature preconditioning is stopped using the remote control.

NOTE

The temperature preconditioning is only activated if the **ignition is off** and the **vehicle is locked.**
If the charging level of the high voltage battery is below 30%, the temperature preconditioning is not activated.
When the vehicle is plugged in, battery charging takes precedence over pre-conditioning.
Consequently, it can only be activated if the battery is charged above a threshold fixed at 80%.
If a recurrent heating / ventilation is programmed and two heating / ventilation procedures are carried out without operating the vehicle, the programming is deactivated 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.

Battery Preconditioning ⇨ 171

Setting timer

NOTE

Several timers can be programmed and saved. It is recommended to programme temperature preconditioning with the vehicle plugged in, in order to optimise the long-term perfomance of the high voltage battery.

Depending on the infotainment system, there are different ways to use programmable charging via the Info Display:

Type A

1. Touch on the Info Display to open the climate settings.
2. Touch **OPTIONS**.
3. Touch or select the menu for temperature preconditioning.
4. Touch + to define a new timer.

5. Touch --:--.
6. Enter time and day.
7. Press ✓ to confirm the settings.
8. Press **ON** to activate the timer.
9. To delete a timer, press 🗑 at the top of the Info Display and delete the desired timer.
10. Confirm the deletion.

The heating / ventilation procedure starts approx. 45 minutes with a Diesel, 30 minutes with a petrol engine before the programmed time, and is maintained 10 minutes after it.
This pre-conditioning time lasts up to 45 min.
with a Diesel engine and up to 30 min. with a petrol engine.

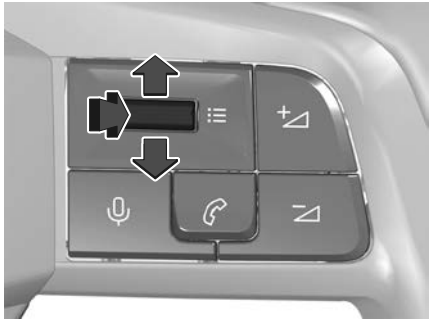
Type B



1. Touch on the Info Display to open the climate settings.
2. Touch and then select the pre-conditioning settings menu.
3. Select **+** to define a new timer or touch ⚙ next to a timer to edit it.
4. Activate the timer.

To delete a timer, select the desired timer and press 🗑 at the lower left corner of the screen.
The heating / ventilation procedure starts approx. 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is plugged in, or 20 minutes before the programmed time when it is not plugged in, and is maintained 10 minutes after it.

Type C



1. Short press: display the settings of the vehicle.
2. Toggle up or down and select the climate settings menu. Press the toggle to confirm the selection.
3. Select the preconditioning settings menu and select one of the following options:
   a. New Precondition
   b. Already existing precondition
4. Press the toggle to define a new timer.
5. Select time and date and press the toggle to confirm.
6. Press the toggle to activate the timer.

⚠ WARNING

Programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to programme the heating.



The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid the risk of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

⚠ WARNING

Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors



Press one of these buttons to switch on/off 3 rear screen and door mirror demisting/de-icing (depending on version).
The indicator lamp in the button comes on when the function is activated.
Demisting/de-icing switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Switch off demisting / defrosting as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

ⓘ NOTE

Demisting/de-icing only operates with the engine running.

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

Introduction about Infotainment System

Important information on operation and traffic safety

⚠ WARNING

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multipath reception due to reflection
- shadowing

Menu



Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound
Long press: switch to standby mode
Rotate: adjust the volume

Displays the Home screen

Displays the menu for the ADAS (Advanced Driver Assistant Systems)

Displays the menu for Date/ Time setting

Displays the menu for Energy app

Displays the menu for the Voice commands

Displays the menu for the System guide

Displays the menu for the Climate settings

Displays the Radio and Media menu

Displays the Mirror Screen menu

Displays the Navigation menu

Displays the Phone menu
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active



Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound
Long press: switch to standby mode
Rotate: adjust the volume

Displays the Home screen

Displays the menu for the ADAS (Advanced Driver Assistant Systems)

Displays the Radio and Media menu

Displays the Phone menu
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active

Displays the Navigation menu

NOTE

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following address: https://www.opel.com/tools/oss-source-codes.html

The system transmits and/or receives radio waves subject to the Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the mentioned system declare the conformity with the Directive 2014/53/EU.

Profiles

Several user profiles can be created. Due to the option of creating profiles, the Infotainment system can be fitted to several drivers. Different settings as well as saved radio stations and destinations will be connected to a specific profile. Thereby, the settings don't need to be adjusted every time another person is driving the vehicle.
To display the profile settings, open the settings app and touch the profile menu.

Creating a Profile

The "Guest" profile has a default display with the possibility of adding to it and/or returning it to its initial configuration. This profile is built into the system and cannot be deleted.
To create a new profile, touch +.
The following settings can be adjusted for each profile:

- profile name
- avatar
- associated device

Once a new profile is created, the profile settings can be changed at any time by touching .

Deleting a Profile

To delete a profile, touch next to the corresponding profile and select .
The guest profile cannot be deleted. The guest profile is a default profile. It is active when no other profile is created or active.

Updating the System

Software and firmware management and updating are carried out remotely, using the Over the Air technology. This updates the vehicle through a secure

connection to the Manufacturer's server (mobile network or Wi-Fi).
Irrespective of a valid subscription to a connected service, the remote management of devices relating to or connected with the security of devices, and the updating of software and firmware, will be carried out when necessary to comply with a legal requirement applicable to the Manufacturer (e.g. The applicable law in terms of product liability, the regulations governing ecall) or when necessary to protect the respective vital interests of the vehicle's users and passengers.
The update history is available through the app or online on the Manufacturer's website.
Make sure:

- Stable Internet connection is established via WiFi or mobile network. ⇨ 134
- Privacy settings are not set to Private mode. ⇨ 134
- Vehicle is parked on level ground.
- Engine is switched off.
- Ignition is switched on.
- BEV: The charging cable has been disconnected for at least four hours.

Automatic Update Download



This function is available when automatic downloads are activated in the Settings app.

The vehicle is checking for updates automatically in the background when the engine is on. When a new software update is available, a message will pop up on the touch screen after the engine is switched off.

NOTE

For this message to appear, the engine must be switched off with the driver's door closed.

Manual Check for Available Updates

1. Open the ⚙ app on the touch screen.
2. Select the update tab.
3. Select an available update to download by tapping on it.

When the download was successful a confirmation message will popup on the touch screen.

Available updates will be listed on the screen. If no update is shown, wait for five minutes. If there are still no updates shown, no new update is available.

Installation

⚠ CAUTION

The engine must be switched off during the installation. Vehicle must remain disconnected from charging cable.

Choose an option:

- Start installation of the update immediately
- Postpone the installation

When postponed, the popup message will appear the next time the engine is switched off.
Installation time can take between a few minutes to a maximum of two hours. A popup message will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.
The installation of an update will continue even if the vehicle is left and locked.

With the next engine start, a message on the screen will inform whether the installation has been finished successfully.
If the installation fails, contact an assistance center via the app or a workshop.

Customization

The Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be personalised.
To display the personalisation menu, open the settings application and touch the menu for customisation.

Screen Color

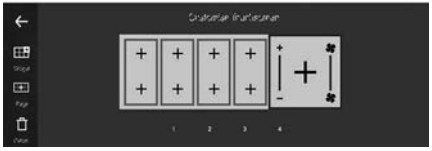
The background color of the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display can be chosen. The chosen background color will immediately be shown in both the Driver Information Centre and the Info Display.

Sound Ambience

An active sport sound for the sport mode can be activated or deactivated.

Pages

Several personalized pages for the Driver Information Center and the Info Display can be created.



Each page can be personalized by choosing the widgets to be displayed.
To add a page, touch .
To delete a page, drag and drop the respective page to .

Radio

Choosing the Media

Display the audio screen by touching in the apps overview.
Touch to switch between the radio and a connected external device as the audio source.



Choosing the Radio Frequency

To tune into a specific radio frequency, touch .
A number pad will be displayed.
Enter the desired frequency and touch to confirm.

Waveband

To select the waveband, touch .

Selecting a Radio Station

Touch briefly to perform an automatic search for the next radio station.
Touch and hold to perform a quick search for the next radio stations.
Touch briefly to perform an automatic search for the previous radio station.
Touch and hold to perform a quick search for the previous radio stations.

Manual station search

Press and hold or .
Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.
A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

Station list

All available radio stations will be displayed as a list by touching the list entry in the radio menu on the left side of the screen.

Storing favorite stations

Up to 24 radio stations of all wavebands can be stored as favorites in the **Presets** list.

Touch Presets to display the preset buttons.

Storing the currently active station

Touch and hold the desired button in the **Presets** list for a few seconds. The respective frequency or station name is displayed on the button.

If a station is already stored on a preset button, that station will be overwritten by the new one.
Alternatively, touch ★ Mem in the radio main menu to store the currently active station.

Storing a station from a station list

Select List and then select the desired station.
To store a station from the station list, briefly touch ★ next to the desired station. The station is stored and the number of the preset button will be displayed. To delete a station, touch ★ again.
Alternatively, touch and hold the name of the station until it is stored.

To delete the station, touch and hold the name of the station again until a corresponding message is displayed.

Retrieving stations

In the radio main menu select **Presets** and then briefly touch the preset button of the desired station.

Memorizing a Radio Station

To save the current radio station, touch ♡ to get to the station line up and then touch + in the lower part of the screen. Buttons which are already used for radio stations can be overwritten. Unused buttons for saving radio stations will be indicated by +.
Alternatively, radio stations can be saved by touching the corresponding heart icon in the station list.
Saved radio stations will be displayed or hidden by touching ♡.
The saved radio stations will be lined up in the lower part of the screen. Touch the desired radio station to tune in.

Audio Settings

Touch ♫, select **OPTIONS** and then select **Audio settings** to open the respective menu.

Tone

Several predefined settings are available to optimize the tone for a specific style of music (e.g. **Pop- Rock** or **Classical**).

To adjust the tone individually, select **User**. Change the settings as desired.

To return to the default factory settings, select ↺.

Balance and fader

Several predefined settings are available to adjust the volume distribution inside the vehicle (e.g. **All passengers** or **Front only**).
To adjust the settings individually, move the cursor on the screen to the desired point.
To return to the default factory settings, select ↺.

Sound

It is possible to activate or deactivate Volume linked to speed or Touch tones.

Activating Traffic Announcements

Many RDS stations broadcast traffic news. If the traffic announcements

function is activated, radio or media playback is interrupted for the duration of a traffic announcement.
To activate traffic announcements, go to the **OPTIONS** menu and activate **TA**.
If **TA** is activated, **TA** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Activating RDS

In the radio main menu, touch **OPTIONS** and activate **RDS**.
If **RDS** is activated, **RDS** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

Radio text

If RDS is activated, information on the radio programme currently active or the music track currently playing are displayed below the programme name.
To show or hide the information, go to the **OPTIONS** menu and activate or deactivate **Information.**

Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally.
DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.

FM-DAB Linking

This function enables switching from an FM station to a corresponding DAB station and vice versa.
Switching from FM to DAB occurs as soon as a corresponding DAB station is available. Therefore, it is recommended to store favorite stations as DAB stations to reduce frequent switching.
Switching from DAB to FM occurs if the signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver and the corresponding FM station is available.

NOTE
After switching, the volume might be different.

Activation

Precondition is that **RDS** is activated before FM-DAB Linking can be activated.

To activate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then select **FM-DAB Follow-up.**

The following symbol will be displayed when FM-DAB Linking is activated:



Deactivation

To deactivate FM-DAB Linking, select **OPTIONS** in the radio main menu and then deselect **FM-DAB Follow-up.**

FM-DAB Linking will automatically be deactivated when **RDS** is deactivated.

Multimedia Pro Type 1

Widgets

A widget is the indication of specific information or gauge, e.g. radio information, navigation information or the engine coolant temperature gauge.



The Driver Information Centre can display one widget per page, the Info Display can contain several widgets.
To add a widget to a page, touch ⊞.
Some widgets are available in different sizes. The bigger a widget is, the less widgets can be displayed on a page.

General Information

Status bar

The status bar is the top bar on the screen. It can indicate the following:

- time
- outside temperature
- Wi-Fi connection status
- Bluetooth® activation
- mobile reception
- activated functions, e.g. A/C

Screen Operations

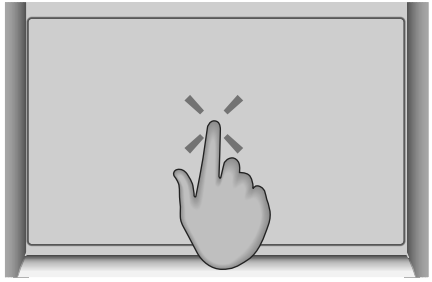
The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touch screen operation.

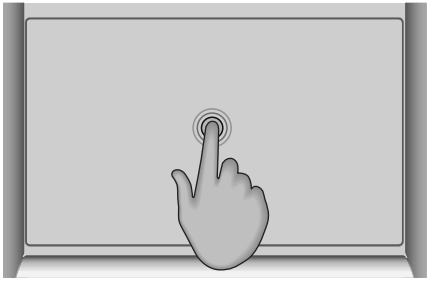
Use the following finger gestures to control the Infotainment system.

Touch



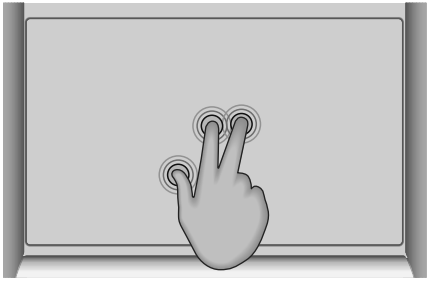
Touch is used to open a menu or select an option.

Touch and Hold



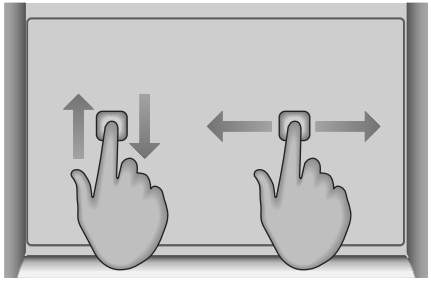
Touch and hold can be used to save radio stations.

Three Fingers Quick Access



Touch is used to display the apps overview.

Swipe



Swipe is used to scroll through a menu or to pan the map.

Returning to the Previous Screen

To return to the previous screen, touch ⟵ in the upper left corner of the screen.
When ⟵ is touched on the home screen, the audio screen will be displayed.

Returning to the Home Screen

To return to the home screen, touch ⌂.

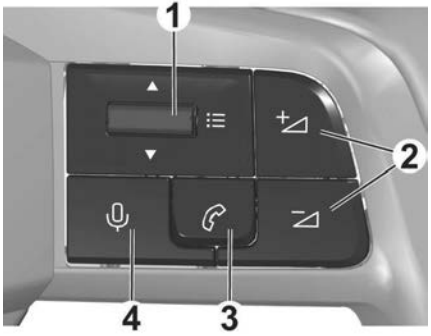
Displaying and Hiding the Menu

Within an app, the menu can be displayed and hidden by touching ☰.

Control Panel

Refer to page ⇨ 123

Steering Wheel Controls



1 Toggle up or down: select the previous / next radio station or track or browse through the list of recent calls.
Short press: display a menu or validate a selection.

2 Short press: adjust the volume or unmute the sound.
Long press on ⊘: mute the sound.

3 Short press: accept an incoming call, hang up, display the list of recent calls or display the phone projection screen.
Long press: refuse an incoming call.

4 Short press: activate the voice assistant of the Infotainment system.
Long press: activate the voice assistant of the connected mobile phone

Applications



To display a list of all available apps, touch ⊞ .
Alternatively, the apps overview will be displayed by a 3-finger touch on the screen.

Voice Commands

NOTE

The answers provided by the voice recognition system may be generated by artificial intelligence.

The voice recognition service offers a choice of 20 languages minimum (French, German, English (UK), English (US), Arabic, Brazilian, Chinese, Danish, Spanish, Hebrew, Italian, Japanese, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Swedish, Czech, Turkish) available with the cellular network and in line with the language chosen and previously configured in the system.
The system supports two languages for cases where the area in which the vehicle is traveling is not covered by the cellular network.
These languages, referred to as on-board languages, are downloaded into the system.
If the chosen language has not been downloaded, a message on the screen appears as soon as the cellular network is not connected for the first time and offers to download it.

To use this new language in all areas, download it beforehand (ignition on without starting the engine) via the Wi-Fi network.
Apply the download procedure displayed on the screen.
Downloading this new language removes the least used on-board language.
The integrated speech recognition can be used to operate the Infotainment system via voice commands.
Activate the speech recognition by:

1. Pressing on the steering wheel.

or

1. Touching in the Info Display

and then

2. Saying "**Hey Opel**"

NOTE

After pressing on the steering wheel or touching in the Info Display, wait for the beep before saying a voice command.

To display some voice command examples, open the help menu in the Info Display. The examples will be sorted by categories, e.g. radio or navigation.

AI assistant

AI assistant is part of the Connected Services and if the user subscribes to it, it will enable an extended range of functions.

To activate AI assistant, you can use the same voice command "**Hey Opel**".

Navigation

https://www.tomtom.com/stellantis-connected-nav

Press the **" Navigation "** application to display the navigation home screen.

Press **" Search "** to enter an address or a name.

Press this button to display the main menu for the various options.

Press this button to display the 3D/2D mode or to display cardinal directions (N, E, S, W).

Select **" Sound activated "**, **" Alerts only "** and **" Silent "** with successive presses on this button.

Press the "plus"/"minus" buttons to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.

Touch in the Info Display to open the navigation app.



Starting a Route Guidance

To start a route guidance, touch to enter an address via a keyboard.
After typing the first letters of the address, matching addresses will be displayed.
Once the address is entered, several routes might be displayed on the map. Choose one before starting the route guidance.

Active Route Guidance

During an active route guidance, information about the route, e.g. the estimated arrival time and the distance, will be displayed on the screen.
To activate or deactivate voice prompts of the route guidance, touch .
To change the route, add a stop, e.g. a restaurant or a petrol station, or to show instructions, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen.

Route Settings

To open the settings menu, touch the three points on the side bar of the screen and then touch the settings menu .
Touch to view map downloads, to set the map colour, to set the points of interest shown on the map and other map settings, to set the arrival information, to set the side bar on the route guidance screen, to set the map orientation or to show the vehicle range on the map.
Touch to set the options for rerouting, to set the preferred route types (fast, short, eco-friendly) or to avoid specific routes (toll roads, unpaved roads, etc.).
Touch to set the types of voice prompts, alerts and sounds.
Touch to set the privacy information (keep journey history, frequent destinations, etc.).

Map Updates

When connected services are activated, the map of the current region will be updated automatically.
When the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the maps of all other regions can be updated via the maps

and display menu within the settings menu .

⚠ WARNING

Warning Navigation is a driving aid. It cannot replace the driver. All guidance instructions should be carefully checked by the user.
By using the navigation, you accept the following terms and conditions: https://www.tomtom.com/en_gb/legal/eula-automotive/?388448

EV Routing

NOTE

EV Routing is part of the Connected Services if the user subscribes to it.

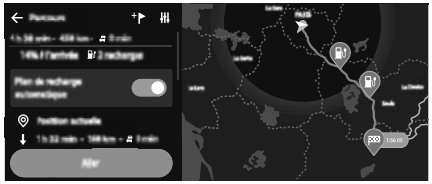
The embedded EV routing system, part of the navigation system, allows for the planning of the most efficient journeys, taking into account the charging stops and the required charging time, details on each charging station as well as the range of the vehicle and traffic information.

EV Routing also adapts when conditions change, e.g. deviations, traffic, and provides the most efficient journeys possible.
To program a journey using the EV Routing:

1. Say "**Hey Opel**".
2. Say the address of your destination.

or

1. Type in the address of your destination.



Connectivity

Connected Services

Multiple connected services are accessible via app, online or inside the vehicle.

NOTE

Connected services are not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

NOTE

Full functionality of connected services is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information as well as vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts.
Services accessible inside the vehicle also include emergency call and assistance call. These functions are automatically activated. terms and conditions apply.
Emergency call ⇨ 225
Correct connectivity settings and privacy settings are necessary to establish the connection to the available connected services.

Connectivity Settings

To display the connectivity menu, open the settings app and touch the menu for connectivity.
The following settings are adjustable:

- wireless devices: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- Wi-Fi networks: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- privacy settings: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorised services

Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" management is associated with each profile. This function is used with: a "Guest" profile configured by default in "Private Mode" or a profile to be created in the system, with or without connection to a mobile device.
For each profile (even "Guest"), the last privacy mode saved value will be restored.



"Sharing Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

NOTE

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.



"Sharing Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

NOTE

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

NOTE

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of commercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).



"Private Mode"

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

NOTE

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

NOTE

This mode will not be applied to the emergency call function or to specific services to which the user has consented under the terms of com-

mercial contracts (e.g. Connected alarm).

NOTE

Professional purposes

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

To change mode, swipe down from the upper edge of the Info Display to display all of the quick settings.



Press this button and select the chosen mode. The mode is highlighted.

OR



Press the **"Settings"** application.

In the list, select the **"Connectivity"** tab.



Select **"Privacy Settings".**



Choose the mode.

Screen Mirroring

The phone projection applications Apple® CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from a smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.
Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with the smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Using the voice assistant of the smartphone

Press and hold on the steering wheel and say the corresponding activation voice command of the smartphone's voice assistant to use the voice assistant of the smartphone via the Infotainment system.

Preparing the Smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.
Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the Smartphone

Connect the phone to the USB port or connect the phone via Bluetooth.
Make sure phone projection is activated in the connectivity settings.

Starting Phone Projection

Touch the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto app on the Touch Screen.
The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

Media

USB ports

Two USB ports are located on the control panel. Another USB port may be located in the rear console.

⚠ WARNING

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

NOTE

The USB ports must always be kept clean and dry.

An MP3 player, USB device, SD card (via USB connector / adapter) or smartphone can be connected to each USB port.
The Infotainment system can play audio files or show picture files contained in USB devices.
When connected to a USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

NOTE

Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system.

NOTE

To use the phone projection feature of the Infotainment system, the smartphone has to be connected to the USB port on the control panel, which may be used for data exchanging. The USB port in the rear console cannot be used for Apple® CarPlay.

Connecting / disconnecting a device

Connect one of the devices mentioned above to a USB port. If required, use the appropriate connection cable. The music function starts automatically.

NOTE

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message appears and the Infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect a USB device, select another function and then remove the USB device.

NOTE

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.
For a detailed description on how to establish a Bluetooth® connection .
If audio playback does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the playback on the smartphone.
First adjust the volume on your smartphone (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of Infotainment system.

File formats

The audio equipment supports different file formats.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

Activating the music function

Connecting the USB or Bluetooth® device.
If device already connected, but playback of stored music files not active: Press ♫, select **SOURCES** and then select the respective source.
Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.

Playback functions

Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch ❙❙ to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to ▶.
Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the previous or next track

Touch ❮ or ❯.

Fast forwarding and rewinding

Touch and hold ❮ or ❯. Release to return to normal playback mode.
Alternatively, you can move the slider showing the current track position to the left or right.

Playing tracks randomly

Select **OPTIONS** and touch the Random icon repeatedly:

ON: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in random order.
OFF: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

Repeating tracks

Select **OPTIONS** and touch the **Repeat** icon ON repeatedly to select one of the following options:

- repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.)
- repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) once
- play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode

Activating the picture viewer

Connecting the USB device.
If device already connected, but picture viewer not active: Press ⊞, select **Photos** and choose the desired folder and picture.



Touch the screen to display the menu bar.

Viewing the previous or next picture

Touch ◀◀ or ▶▶.

Starting or stopping a slide show

Select ▶ to view the pictures stored on the USB device in a slide show.
Touch ❙❙ to end the slide show.

Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple® CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from your smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.
Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with your smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

Preparing the smartphone

iPhone®: Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.
Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

Connecting the smartphone iPhone

Connect the phone to the USB port.
If the phone is already connected via Bluetooth®, upon connecting to the USB port and launching Apple® CarPlay, the Bluetooth® connection will disconnect. After disconnecting the USB connection, the phone will be connected via Bluetooth® again.

Android phone

Connect the phone via Bluetooth® and then connect the phone to the USB port.

Starting phone projection

If phone projection is not starting automatically, press and then touch **Apple® CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.
The phone projection screen displayed depends on your smartphone and software version.

Returning to the Infotainment screen

Press, e.g., the button on the control panel.

Phone

Bluetooth® connection

Touch in the Info Display to open the phone app.
Once a mobile phone is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth®, the following functions are available via the phone app:

- display the contact list
- display a list of the recent calls
- dial a telephone number via a keyboard

Pairing a Mobile Phone

1. To pair a mobile phone, open the settings menu in the phone app in the Touch Screen.
2. Open the Bluetooth menu on the mobile phone and activate the function.
3. Select the mobile phone from the list in the Touch Screen. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone.
4. Once the mobile phone is successfully paired, it will be connected automatically and shown as connected.
5. Also a second mobile phone can be connnected via the settings menu in the phone app.

Making a Call

To make a call, choose one of the contacts from the contact list, dial a telephone number via the keyboard or select a number from the recent calls list.

Receiving a Call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a message on the Touch Screen. To accept an incoming call or hang up an active call, touch the corresponding

button on the Touch Screen or press on the steering wheel.
To refuse an incoming call, touch the corresponding button on the Touch Screen or press and hold on the steering wheel.

Settings

To display the system settings menu, open the settings app and touch the menu for the system settings.



The following system settings can be adjusted:

- language
- date and time, time format, date format
- unit for distance and consumption
- unit for outside temperature
- restore the factory settings
- view system information

Brightness

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination and the interior lighting, open the settings app and touch the menu for the brightness adjustment.
The interior lighting can also be activated or deactivated.

Audio Settings

In the Settings menu within the Radio app, the following settings can be adjusted:

- sound settings: ambience sound, equaliser, balance
- radio settings: station list order, activation or deactivation of station follow-up and traffic and news announcements
- volume settings: system voice, ringtone, phone call, system sounds, navigation warnings

Multimedia Type 2

General Information

Refer to page 129

Control Panel



Short press: switch the system on / off or mute the sound
Long press: switch to standby mode
Rotate: adjust the volume

Displays the Home screen

Displays the menu for the ADAS (Advanced Driver Assistant Systems)

Displays the Radio and Media menu

Displays the Phone menu
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active



Displays the Navigation menu

Steering Wheel Controls

Refer to page ⇨ 130

Applications

Refer to page ⇨ 130

Voice Commands

Refer to page ⇨ 131

Connectivity

Refer to page ⇨ 133

Screen Mirroring

Refer to page ⇨ 135

Media

Refer to page ⇨ 135

Phone

Refer to page ⇨ 138

Settings

Refer to page ⇨ 139

Smartphone Station

The Smartphone Station is operated via the MyOpel App on an external device, such as a mobile phone, that is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth®. The following menus can be selected:

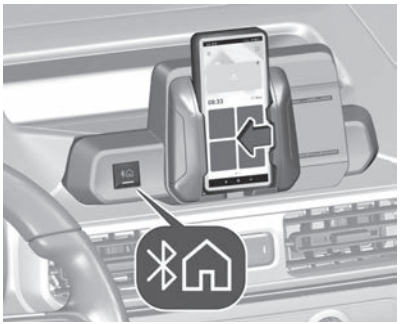
- Library: browse playlists, artists, albums, tracks and directories.
- Phone: make and receive phone calls.
- Web radio: select from various web radio stations.
- Tuner radio: manually search for radio stations.
- Settings: personalise system settings.

⚠ WARNING

Always place the smartphone **in a vertical position while driving** so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone.

The smartphone can only be positioned horizontally when the vehicle is stationary.

Installation of the external device



Pull the slide holder to the right, insert the mobile device into the support and fix it with the slide holder.

Pairing a mobile device

Automatic pairing

Open the Bluetooth® menu on the mobile device and activate the function. The system will automatically search for new devices.
The system always searches for the latest Bluetooth® connections. The searching process may take some time.
Open the Bluetooth® menu on the mobile device.
The LED flashes green to indicate that the Smartphone Station is visible.

If the Bluetooth® connection is ready, the LED on the button illuminates green and the vehicle identification number will be visible in the Bluetooth® menu.

Manual pairing

If the system does not find the mobile device automatically, press and hold button .
The LED flashes green to indicate that the Smartphone Station is visible.
If the Bluetooth® connection is ready, the LED on the button illuminates green and the vehicle identification number will be visible in the Bluetooth® menu.

NOTE

The system is not compatible with a tablet or a laptop.

WARNING

Always place the smartphone **in a vertical position while driving** so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone.

The smartphone can only be positioned horizontally when the vehicle is stationary.

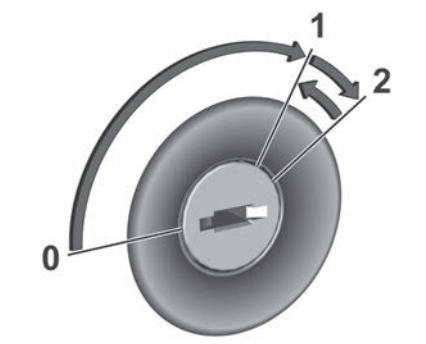
Automatic reconnection

The system allows automatic reconnection of smartphone already connected.
When the smartphone is switched on to the Smartphone Station system, the application is automatically launched on the smartphone via a NFC chip communication**.
The NFC communication must be activated on the smartphone ** Depending on smartphone.

STARTING & OPERATING

Starting And Stopping The Engine

Vehicles with Ignition Switch



0 ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously

1 ignition on power mode: ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable

2 engine start: release key after engine has been started

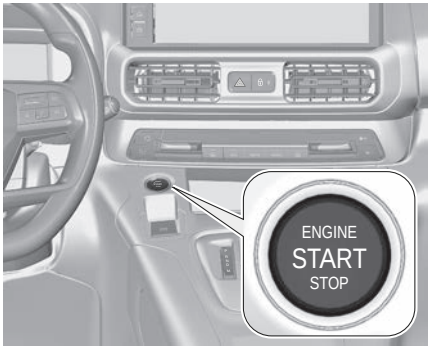
1. Turn key to **position 1** to release the steering wheel lock.
2. **Manual transmission**: operate clutch and brake pedal.
3. **Automatic transmission**: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
   Do not operate accelerator pedal.
   Diesel engines: wait until control indicator
   extinguishes.
4. Turn key briefly to **position 2** and release after engine has been started.

   Manual transmission: during an Autostop (Stop & Start), the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.

   Automatic transmission: during an Autostop (Stop & Start), the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

Autostop = engine standby with the Stop & Start system.

Vehicles with power button



1. Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
2. Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
   Do not operate accelerator pedal.
3. Press **Start/Stop** button.

4. Release button after starting procedure begins. Diesel engine starts after control indicator for preheating extinguishes.
5. Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press Start/Stop once more briefly.

To start the engine during an Autostop:

- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal.

Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press Start/Stop without operating clutch or brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

Emergency Shutoff during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Start/Stop** for five seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled.
Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, a message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



Hold the electronic key with buttons outside at the marking on the steering column cover as shown in the illustration.

On vehicles with manual transmission, select neutral gear, operate the clutch pedal, the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop.**

On vehicles with automatic transmission, move the selector to position **P**, operate the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**.
This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible.
For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

Heating functionalities

NOTE

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Steering wheel lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then turn the key to position 2 without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor until the engine starts.

As soon as the engine starts, release the key so it returns to position **1**:

- In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23 °C), to ensure correct operation and durability of your vehicle's mechanical components (engine and gearbox), leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

NOTE

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

Stop & Start (Autostop)

The Stop & Start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.

Activation

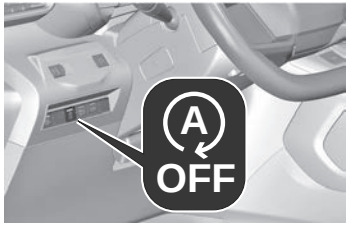
By default, the system is activated when the ignition is switched on. Depending on version activate the system manually:

1. Press A OFF. The system is ready to operate when the LED in the button A OFF is not illuminated. If the Stop & Start system is temporarily not available and the button A OFF is pressed, the LED in the button flashes.
2. Press and activate the system in the Info Display.

The activation of the system is confirmed by a message.

Autostop = engine standby

Deactivation



Depending on version deactivate the system manually:

1. Press Ⓐ OFF. The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.
2. Press 🚗 and deactivate the system in the Info Display.

The deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of Ⓐ OFF in the Driver Information Centre and the display of a message.

Vehicles with manual transmission

An Autostop can be activated at a standstill or at a speed below 20 km/h.

Activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the selector lever to neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.
The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.
The Stop & Start system will be disabled on inclines of 12% or more.

Indication



An Autostop is indicated by control indicator Ⓐ.
During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The Stop & Start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The Stop & Start system is not manually deactivated.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The sliding doors are closed
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is not too low.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Ⓐ Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

NOTE

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. Immediately after higher speed driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the Stop & Start system.

Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depress the clutch pedal without depressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is restarted in the following cases:

- brake pedal released while **D** or **M** is selected
- brake pedal released and **N** selected when selector is moved to select **D** or **M**
- brake pedal depressed and **P** selected when selector is moved to select **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**
- **R** selected

Restart of the engine by the Stop & Start system

Vehicles with manual transmission: The selector must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.
If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop , the engine will be restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system:

- The **Stop & Start** system is manually deactivated.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The sliding doors are opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

WARNING

Opening the bonnet. Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



⚠ WARNING

Driving on flooded roads. Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Fault

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel,

then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.



In the event of a system fault, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.



The warning light in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Audible Pedestrian Warning System

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching, when driving in **Electric** mode.

The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear. This function cannot be deactivated.

Fault



In the event of a fault, illuminates on the cluster.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Brakes

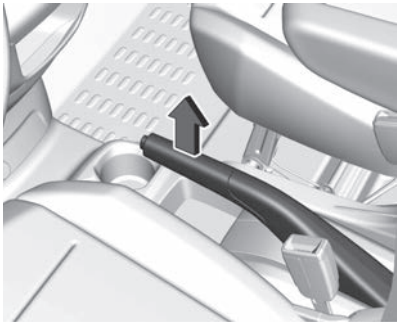
The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.
If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.
When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice.
Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Parking brake

⚠ WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator illuminates constantly when electric parking brake is applied.

Manual parking brake



⚠ WARNING

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope. To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever. To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Electric parking brake



Applying when vehicle is stationary

⚠ WARNING

Pull switch (Ⓟ) for a minimum of one second until control indicator (Ⓟ) illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied. The electric parking brake operates automatically with adequate force. Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing

- Switch on ignition. Keep foot brake pedal depressed and then push switch the indicator light.

Drive away function

- Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is only possible if the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is activated.

It is not possible when switch the indicator light is pulled at the same time.

Braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch the indicator light is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle. As soon as the switch the indicator lightis released, braking will be stopped.
The antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control stabilize the vehicle while the switch the indicator light is kept pulled. If an error of the electric parking brake occurs, a warning

message is displayed in the driver information centre. If the antilock brake system and the Electronic Stability Control fail, one or both indicators (Ⓟ) and illuminate in the instrument cluster. In this case, stability can only be provided by repeatedly pulling and pushing the switch (Ⓟ) until the vehicle is immobilised.

Automatic operation

Automatic operation includes automatic application and automatic release of the electric parking brake.
The electric parking brake can also be applied or released manually by using the switch the indicator light.
Automatic application:

- The electric parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched off.
- The indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the application.

Automatic release:

- Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.
- The indicator light extinguishes in the instrument cluster and a display message pops up to confirm the release.

If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and the brake is not released automatically, make sure the front doors are correctly closed.

Deactivation of automatic operation

In certain situations, e.g. in very cold weather conditions, when being towed etc., it may be necessary that the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is deactivated.

1. Start the engine.
2. If the parking brake is released, apply the parking brake pulling the switch (Ⓟ).
3. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Press the switch (Ⓟ) for at least 10 seconds and maximum 15 seconds.
5. Depress and hold the brake pedal. Release the switch (Ⓟ).
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the switch (Ⓟ) for two seconds.

The deactivation of the automatic operation of the electric parking brake is confirmed by AUTO Ⓟ OFF illuminating in the instrument cluster. The electric parking brake can only be applied and released manually.
To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

Functionality check

When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.
Fault Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Control indicator (Ⓟ) flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

Brake assist

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.
Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required.

Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing

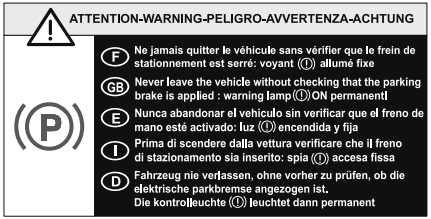
With a manual gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and engage a gear.

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.

When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



Active Emergency Braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and pedestrians directly ahead, when the driver does not actively take action either by manual braking or by steering. For vehicles equipped with camera and radar, active emergency braking also detects cyclists. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver may be warned by the forward collision alert. The feature uses various inputs (e.g.camera sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ WARNING

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. It warns the driver if the vehicle is at risk of a collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist. Just before the imminent collision, it reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.
The system may also react on animals. However, animals smaller than 0.5 m or objects on the road may not be detected.
After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.
The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Regenerative braking

⚠ WARNING

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the engine braking may be tem-

porarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficient, the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.

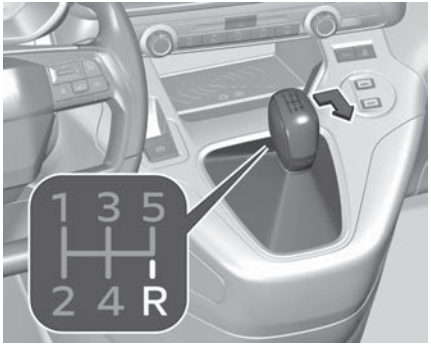
⚠ WARNING

Depending on the engine braking force the brake lights are illuminated.

Regenerative braking generates electrical energy resulting from engine braking to charge the high voltage battery.

Transmission

Manual transmission



To engage reverse on 5-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal and move the selector lever to the right and rear.
To engage reverse on 6-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal, pull the ring under the selector lever and move the selector lever quite to the left and front.
If the gear does not engage, set the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again. Then repeat gear selection.
Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily. When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.
When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

i NOTE

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Gear selector



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.

P Park

R Reverse

N Neutral

D Drive

M Manual

After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

1. To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary.

   In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.
2. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 2 km/h (1.5 mph) : risk of sudden braking!
- **N** has been selected for some time

If the vehicle is moving too fast **P** is not engaged.

Reverse mode R

To engage or disengage R, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

⚠ CAUTION

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the automatic transmission. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

ⓘ NOTE

In slippery conditions, operate the vehicle in D for enhanced riding and handling performance.

This mode is for normal driving.

⚠ WARNING

With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

⚠ WARNING

Automatic gearbox

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Manual mode M

Manual Mode allows manual control over the gear changes using the paddles behind the steering wheel.

- Press **M** while in **D** mode to toggle between **D** and **M**.

Manual mode **M** can only be selected if **D** is engaged.
The selected gear is indicated in the cluster.
If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Eco mode



This mode adjusts the settings of the systems for a more economic fuel consumption, e.g. by optimising the automatic transmission shift points and adapting the sensitivity of the accelerator pedal.

Free wheeling / car wash mode (ICE)

In certain situations, e.g., in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off.

To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed.

1. Depress the brake pedal and select **N**.
2. Within five seconds, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch off ignition and move the selector forwards or backwards.
3. Release the brake pedal and switch on ignition.
4. Depress and hold the brake pedal and push the switch (Ⓟ).
5. Release the brake pedal and switch off ignition.

A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes.

To revert to normal operation, depress and hold the brake pedal, switch on the engine and press **P**.

Electronic driving programmes

Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration when driving in **D** or **M**. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault, illuminates and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Electronic transmission control enables only third gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.
Do not drive faster than 60 mph (100 km/h)
Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, it is not possible to select another mode when P is engaged.
If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads.
If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Drive Selector (Electric)

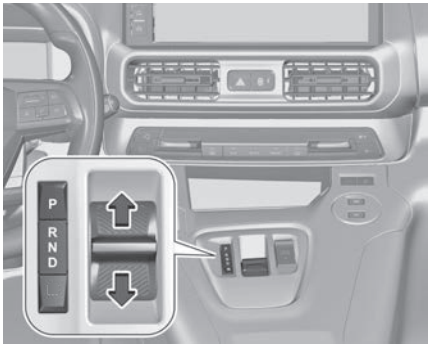
The vehicle uses an electric drive unit with a 1-gear transmission.

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle seems to accelerate slowly or not respond when you try to go faster, do not continue your journey. The electric drive unit could be damaged. Consult a workshop as soon as possible.

ⓘ NOTE

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the electric drive unit. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.



Move the selector or press the respective buttons.

P : park mode

R : reverse mode

N : neutral mode

D : automatic mode

After moving the selector it returns to the centre position. The engaged mode is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Moving the selector beyond the resistance point skips neutral mode **N**.

Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time. When **D** or **R** is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Park mode P

1. To engage **P**, press button **P** when vehicle is stationary.

   In **P**, the front wheels of the vehicle are blocked.
2. To disengage **P**, depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

P is automatically engaged when:

- the ignition is switched off
- the driver's door is opened while the vehicle's speed is below 2 km/h (1.5 mph)
- **N** has been selected for some time

Reverse mode R

1. To engage or disengage **R**, the vehicle must be at standstill and the brake pedal has to be depressed.

⚠ CAUTION

Engaging **R** while the vehicle is moving forwards could damage the

electric drive unit. Only select **R** after the vehicle has been stopped.

Neutral mode N

In this mode, the propulsion system does not transfer torque to the wheels.

Automatic mode D

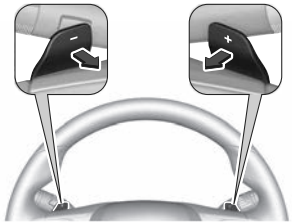
This mode is for normal driving.

Regenerative braking mode with one-pedal driving

In this mode, vehicle speed is significantly reduced by releasing the accelerator pedal, without operating the brake pedal.



Three braking levels are selectable. The respective braking level is indicated by one to three triangle segments in the Driver Information Centre.



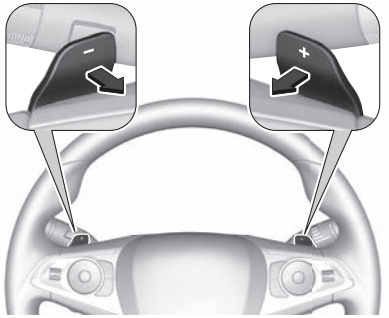
Pull left paddle - to increase the braking force and pull right paddle + to decrease.
Use the maximum braking force when driving down steep hills, in deep snow, in mud or in stop-and-go traffic.

⚠ WARNING

In the case of extreme temperatures or if the high voltage battery is almost fully charged, the brake force of the engine braking may be temporarily reduced. If the braking force is not sufficientm the driver has to be prepared to use the brake pedal.

Steering Wheel Mounted Paddles

Depending on version, the paddles allow manual control of the transmission or setting of the regenerative braking level.
On ICE versions In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.
On BEV versions, the paddles control the amount of regenerative braking.



ICE vehicles:

Selects next gear up.

BEV vehicles:

Decreases regenerative braking effect.

ICE vehicles:

Selects next gear down.

BEV vehicles:

Increases regenerative braking effect.

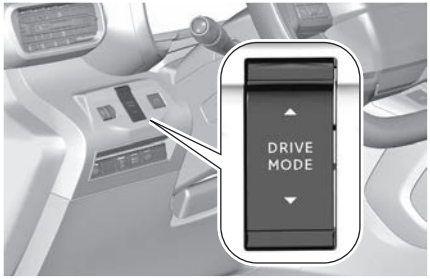
Driving Modes

Driving Mode Selector

Following drive modes are selectable:

- **Normal mode**
- **Power mode**
- **Eco mode**

Each drive mode corresponds to a different vehicle setting.



Normal mode

ICE

The settings in this mode are set by default. Everytime the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected.

BEV

The settings in this mode are set by default. Everytime the ignition is switched on, this mode is selected.

Eco

ICE

This mode reduces the fuel consumption by optimizing the operation of the heating and air conditioning.
While coasting the vehicle, the engine is idling with reduced engine brake.

BEV

To optimise range, electric engine power output and heating are reduced. Selective ride control.

Power mode

ICE

Provides the same performance as **Normal mode**, however, when the vehicle is fully loaded.

BEV

Provides the same performance as **Normal mode**, however, when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Engine exhaust

⚠ DANGER

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

- If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.
- Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

- Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust filter

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.
The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of or , accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 60 km/h (36 mph) until the control indicator extinguishes.

NOTE

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapour can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behavior of the vehicle or the environment.

Cleaning process not possible

If or stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.
The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

NOTE

Fuel grades other than those listed in the "Fuel" chapter could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter.
Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Fuel

Fuels Compatibility

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as **Arduous conditions**.

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

⚠ WARNING

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

ⓘ NOTE

The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (Petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Charging (BEV)

General Recommendations

These recommendations and general information apply to electrified vehicles:

High Voltage System

⚠ DANGER

The High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, dealer recommends that you:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
- Never work on the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.

⚠ DANGER

Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. The Manufacturer recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

⚠ DANGER

In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.

⚠ WARNING

High-pressure washing

To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Move away from the vehicle.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident with an airbag deployment

The traction battery is automatically disconnected from the electrical circuit to prevent the initiation of short circuits and/or fires.

⚠ WARNING

This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

BEV vehicles

⚠ CAUTION

When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

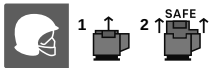
⚠ CAUTION

Low traction battery charge / Parking

If exterior temperatures are below 0°C, avoid parking the vehicle outside with a charge level below 20%.

⚠ WARNING

These labels are intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on the following label:



Traction Battery

Preserving the Traction Battery

To preserve the range and the durability of the high voltage battery, the following is recommended:

- Charge the high voltage battery to a charging level of 100 % once a week. If the vehicle has not been fully charged for 1500 km, a message will be shown on the instrument cluster reminding to do so as soon as possible. If the vehicle has been parked for longer than one week without charging, start the vehicle as usual and charge the high voltage battery to a charging level of 100% as soon as possible.
- do not completely discharge the high voltage battery.
- do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than twelve hours) when the high voltage battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C and above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at low temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above 30 °C.
- Do not use the high voltage battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the high voltage battery.

Traction Battery Overheating



If the following warning lights appear, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, it is required to:

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in the best conditions of safety.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.
4. Call the fire department and/or the emergency services and tell them that the vehicle is an electric one.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of death / Risk of serious injury

A chain reaction can occur up to a traction battery fire.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Disposing of the Traction Battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of dealer are followed.

If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the dealer dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, dealer ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Precautions for people fitted with a pacemaker

If you are fitted with a pacemaker or similar device, consult your doctor or the electro-medical device's manufacturer about any precautions you should take or instructions you should follow and ensure that it is guaranteed to work in an environment which meets the recommendations of the ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection - 1998 Guidelines).

⚠ CAUTION

For **domestic or accelerated charging,** do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.

For **superfast charging**, do not use it yourself and avoid approaching a public superfast charging point. Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

Charging System

The electrical circuit of the electric system is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



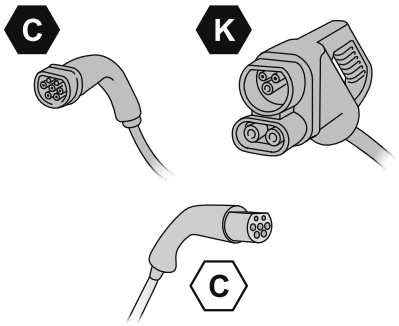
⚠ DANGER

In the event of a problem

All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - Risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

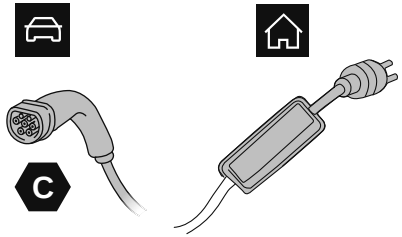
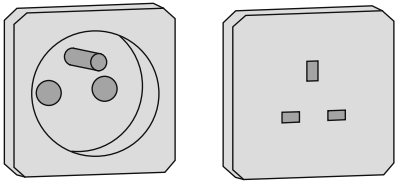
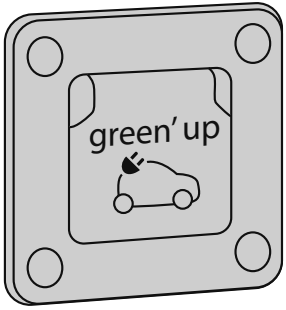
Charging cables, sockets and charger

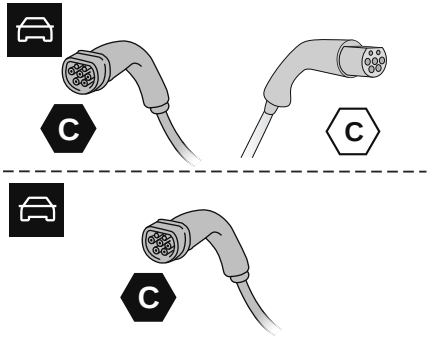
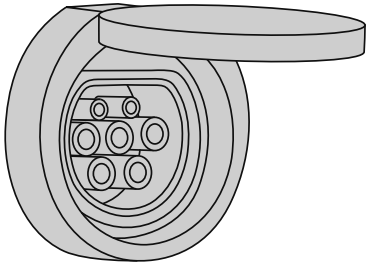
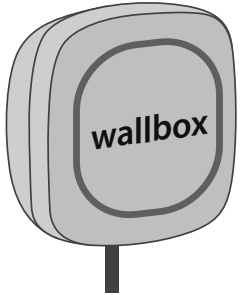
The traction battery can be charged using several different types of cables. The charging cables supplied with the vehicle are compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale.
If you are traveling abroad, refer to the following tables to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).
Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.

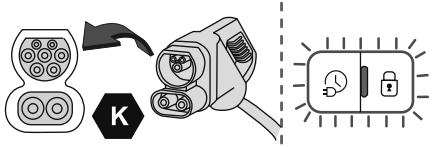


The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type
C	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC
C	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC
K	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC

Charging Type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit  Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side)	Conventional electrical socket (depending on country) 	Charge limited to a maximum of 10 A
	green'up type socket  	Charge limited to a maximum of 16 A

Charging Type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 3 charging cable  Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).	Accelerated charging unit socket.  Accelerated charging unit.  	Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A per phase.

Charging Type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 4 charging cable  Identification labels **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).	Superfast DC charging station	Up to 250 A.

NOTE

The estimated charging time is indicated on the instrument panel when the vehicle is connected. It may vary depending on various factors such as the outside temperature or the quality of the electricity supply.
If the outside temperature is below -10°C, it is recommended to connect the vehicle as soon as possible as the charging time may increase significantly. The traction battery may not charge fully.

⚠ CAUTION

Domestic charging cable (mode 2)

It is recommended to have the domestic electrical network inspected by a professional before using it to charge your vehicle.
It is essential to avoid damaging the cable and to keep it intact.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

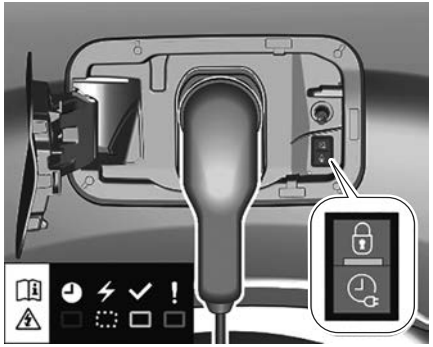
⚠ CAUTION

Accelerated charging unit (mode 3)

Do not dismantle or modify the accelerated charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire! To find out how it is used, please refer to the accelerated charging unit's user instructions.

Charging Flap

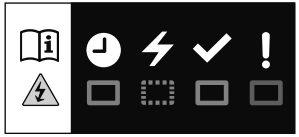
The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



Nozzle locking indicator light

- Steady red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked into the connector
- Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible

Deferred charging activation button



Status of charging indicator light	Meaning
Steady white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Flashing white	Charging initialisation.
Steady blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging in progress.
Steady green	Charging complete.
Steady red	Malfunction.

⚠ DANGER

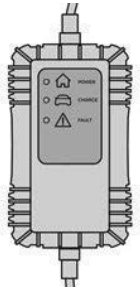
In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

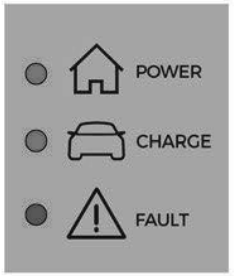
⚠ WARNING

Take care not to pass the charging cable under the bumper when connecting or disconnecting it, as this may inadvertently open the tailgate.

Control unit (mode 2)

Refer to the handbook supplied with the control unit before use.
If resetting the device does not work, consult a dealer or qualified workshop





Illuminated steadily when the device is powered.

Illuminated steadily when charge is complete or battery is in preconditioning phase. Flashing when power is flowing to the vehicle.

Illuminated steadily during self test or in case of fault.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first.
For more information, refer to the handbook supplied with the control unit.

Charging Procedure

- Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
- Press on the symbols on the rear of the charging flap to open it , and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

⚠ CAUTION

Before charging

Depending on the context:

- Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

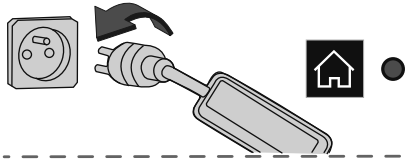
⚠ DANGER

During charging

While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or trunk) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the hood:

- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

Domestic charging (Mode 2)



- Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit illuminate, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.

1. Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
2. Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

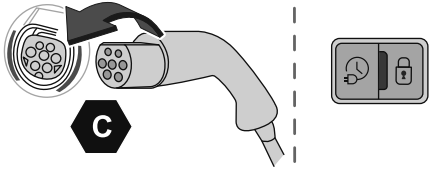
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

NOTE

When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging (Mode 3)



1. Follow the accelerated charging unit user instructions.
2. Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
3. Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

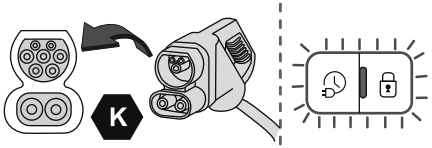
Superfast charging (Mode 4)

NOTE

Before charging

Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.
If the exterior temperature is below:

- 32°F (0°C), charging times may be extended.
- -4°F (-20°C), charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).



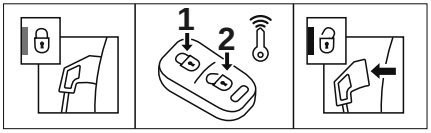
- Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
- Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.

The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator light in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

NOTE

During Superfast charging, the battery pack may produce clicking noises. This is a normal behavior caused by the expansion of some elements in the battery.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it.**
- If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator light in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds.**

The charging indicator light comes on in white.

NOTE

With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

NOTE

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator light in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

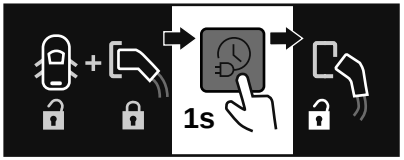
DANGER

After charging

Check that the charging flap is closed.
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

Manual unlocking of the charging connector

If the nozzle stays locked in the charging port, press and hold the deferred charging button inside the charging flap to unlock it.



Cancelling the charging process

NOTE

At public charging stations, the cancelling and subsequent resuming of the charging process may cause additional costs.

Once the charging process has started, only the driver's door can be unlocked without cancelling the charging process. Therefore, activate the driver's door only function in the vehicle personalisation.
Press on the remote control to cancel the charging process at any time.
Press twice to cancel the charging process at any time if the function **driver's door only** is activated in the vehicle personalisation.

Deferred charging

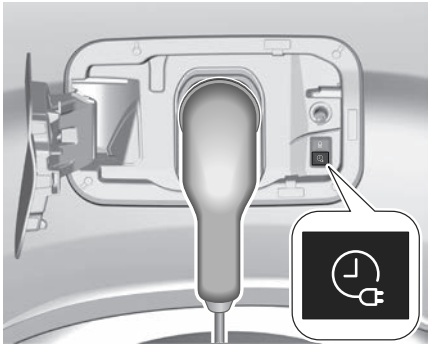
By default, charging starts as soon as the charging cable is connected to the charging port of the vehicle. It is also possible to schedule charging using the Info Display.
Programmable charging is only possible when charging at a domestic electri-

cal outlet / Green'Up socket or a wall box.
Depending on the infotainment system, there are two different ways to use programmable charging via the Info Display:

Navigation System / Multimedia Pro



1. Press ⌂
2. Touch ⚡
3. Select **Charging**
4. Touch 🕒
5. Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts.
6. Touch **OK**.
7. Plug in the vehicle.



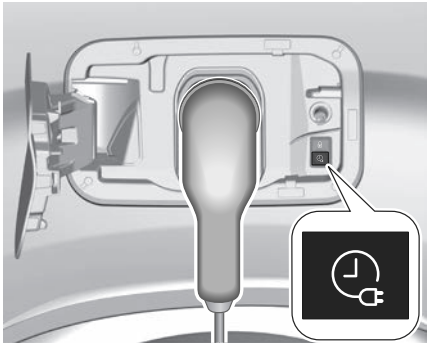
8. Within one minute, press 🕒 to activate programmable charging.
9. Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Multimedia



1. Press ⊞
2. Touch 🕒
3. Define the number of hours and minutes after which the charging process starts.
4. Touch ✓ to confirm.
5. Plug in the vehicle.



The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

6. Within one minute, press to activate programmable charging.
7. Depending on version, lock the vehicle.

The status indicator illuminates blue indicating that programmable charging is active.

Battery preconditioning

To achieve the best charging performance for the battery and provide consistent charging times, the battery needs to achieve a specific temperature.

Battery preconditioning allows to heat up the battery up to this temperature in preparation for a charging stop.

NOTE

Battery preconditioning will not be available if the battery charge is below :

- 30% when charging;
- 10% when activating manual preconditioning.

NOTE

Activating the preconditioning will use a small portion of the battery charge, impacting the range of the vehicle.

NOTE

Battery preconditioning is most efficient when it is activated 30-45 minutes before charging to allow the battery to reach its ideal temperature.

With Type 1 Infotainment screen

1. Open the Energy App
2. Select the Charging tab.
3. Activate **Battery preconditioning**.

With Type 2 Infotainment or Smartphone Station

1. Scroll to the Trip Computer page.
2. Using the button on the end of the Wiper stalk, scroll until **Activate Battery Preconditioning** is displayed.
3. Press and hold the Wiper stalk button until the selection is confirmed.

Vehicle to Load (V2L)

Vehicle to Load (V2L) is a function that allows the use of the traction battery to power or charge external devices as long as the battery is above 30% charge. If the battery reaches 30%, the energy transfer will stop automatically. The adapter plugs into the charging port of the vehicle and offers a stand-

ard 230V / 16A plug for connecting the external device.

⚠ WARNING

Misuse of the adapter can cause electric shocks or start a fire.

⚠ WARNING

The device is waterproof against rainfall, but it is not advisable to connect it in bad weather as it can damage the external device. The V2L adapter does not resist being submerged.

NOTE

Using the device will drain the battery, check that the vehicle is charged sufficiently to reach a charging point.

NOTE

Pay attention to the vehicle and the external device when using V2L so that only the intended persons use the system.

NOTE

For more information, please refer to the manual supplied with the V2L device.

Activation

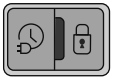
With the vehicle unlocked and ignition ON:

1. Plug in the adapter in the socket.



2. Press the button on the adapter.
3. When the LED on the adapter is illuminated steady green, plug the external device into the adapter.

When connected, the infotainment display will open a dedicated Energy Transfer page, and the following LEDs will illuminate:



Flashing green



Steady

Deactivation

1. Disconnect the external device.
2. Press the button on the V2L Plug and wait for the LED to turn off.
3. Once the LED is off, remove the V2L plug from charging port of vehicle and close it.

Vehicle Loading

Roof Bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

Mounting roof rack

Vehicles with roof railing



Mounting points are located at the bottom of the roof railing.
Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

⚠ WARNING

Recommendations. Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof. Secure the load firmly.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of loading (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:

– Transverse bars on longitudinal bars: **80 kg**.

– Two transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.

– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **150 kg**.

– An aluminium rack: **120 kg**.

– A steel rack: **115 kg**.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars or the roof rack and the fixings on the vehicle. Refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.



⚠ WARNING

In the event of loading a 7-seat model (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:

– Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.

– An aluminium rack: **70 kg**.

– A steel rack: **65 kg**.

⚠ WARNING

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for specific vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Vehicles without roof railing



To fasten a roof rack, unscrew the caps in the roof strips. Insert the mounting provisions, as instructed, in the retainer.

Trailer Towing

General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle.
Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.
The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage e.g. in case of four bulbs with a power of 5 W each, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single 5 W lamp remains or none remain.
Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye.
If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

NOTE

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.

For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing Recommendation

Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded.
The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.
The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.
The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 meters of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).
The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate .

Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.
The maximum permissible vertical coupling load is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.

Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

Driving Tips

Driving On Slippery Surfaces

⚠ CAUTION

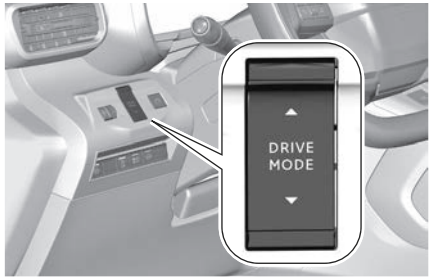
The vehicle is designed to drive principally on-road, but it also enables driving off-road occasionally. However, do not drive on terrain where the vehicle could be damaged due to obstacles, such as stones among others and on terrain with steep inclines and poor grip.

Do not cross waters.

⚠ CAUTION

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can cause a collision or losing control.

Selective ride control is designed to optimize traction in low-grip conditions (snow, mud and sand).
It adapts to the terrain by acting on the front wheels, in doing so this saves the weight normally associated with a more conventional four wheel drive system.



Selective ride control allows to choose between five driving modes by the toggle switch:

- ESC off mode
- standard mode
- snow mode
- mud mode
- sand mode

A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre to confirm the chosen mode.

ESC off mode
The ESC and Traction Control are deactivated in this mode.
ESC and Traction Control are reactivated automatically from 50 km/h (30 mph) or everytime the ignition is switched on.

Standard mode
This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different types of grip generally encountered in normal day to day driving.
Everytime the ignition is switched off, the system is automatically reset to this mode.

Snow mode
This mode adapts to the grip conditions encountered by each wheel when starting.
When advancing, the system optimizes wheel spin to guarantee the best acceleration based on the available traction.
Recommended in cases of deep snow and steep inclines.

This mode is active up to a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph).

Mud mode

This mode allows considerable wheel spin at start-up for the wheel with the least grip, this removes mud and reestablishes traction.
Simultaneously, the wheel with the most grip is provided with the most torque possible.
This mode is active up to a speed of 80 km/h (48 mph).

Sand mode

This mode allows a small amount of simultaneous wheel spin on the two drive wheels, enabling the vehicle to advance and reduce the risk of sinking.
This mode is active up to a speed of 120 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS (ADAS)

Introduction To Assistance Systems

General Information

NOTE

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

NOTE

Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

NOTE

Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

WARNING

Radar(s)

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g.mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g.heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).

WARNING

Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tun-

nel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

NOTE

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

WARNING

Parking Sensors

The operation of the parking sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

NOTE

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

WARNING

Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

NOTE

Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European GSR v2 regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
- Parking sensors.

- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
  Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
- During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Shortcuts for driving aids

The full list of available driving aids can be found in the **Functions** tab.

Driving aids can be accessed directly to quickly activate/deactivate them.

By default, some driving aids are already stored in the **Shortcuts** tab (e.g. Lane Keeping Assist).

Other driving aids can be added or deleted from this tab.



It is configured in the **ADAS>Functions** touch screen application.

Press the button to access the ADAS application



Press the button corresponding to the driving assistance concerned:

- Full symbol: the function is added to the **Shortcuts** tab.
- Empty symbol: the function is deleted from the **Shortcuts** tab.
- Check the modification in the **Shortcuts** tab.

Multiple Deactivation

It is possible to deactivate several driver assistance functions simultaneously by long pressing the Driving aids button.
This is done in two steps:

- The selection of all the functions that you want to deactivate.
- The simultaneous deactivation of all these functions.

Selection of functions

Press this button on the dashboard to display the **ADAS** tabs.

Press this button on the display to display the list of functions that can be deactivated with a long press.

- Select the functions that will be deactivated.

The following slide will appear.

Deactivation of these functions

Press and hold this button on the dashboard for a second.

A short beep will be heard to confirm the deactivation.
All previously selected functions are deactivated until the next vehicle restart.

Speed Control Assistance System

Speed limiter

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed. The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 30 km/h (18 mph).
The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

Switching on the system



Press LIMIT.
Depending on version, either the speed limiter screen or only LIMIT is displayed.
LIMIT is grey indicating that the system is still not active.

Activation of the functionality

Press **OK** or ||▶ to activate the speed limiter. LIMIT is illuminated in green or white.

Setting speed by the driver



The preset speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the speed limiter. Depending on version, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated to detect speed limit signs.

When passing the speed limit sign

With activated speed limiter, **OK?** is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

With activated speed limiter, press **OK** on the steering wheel.

OK? is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly to the final point. In this case, the preset speed value flashes.
Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.
When exceeding the preset speed is not caused by depressing the accelerator pedal, e.g., when driving down a steep slope, an audible signal is given.

⚠ WARNING

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the preset speed. If necessary, depress the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press ||▶, speed limiter is in pause mode. LIMIT is illuminated in grey. The vehicle is driven without speed limiter. Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Resume limit speed

Press ||▶ or **OK**, the stored speed limit will be obtained.

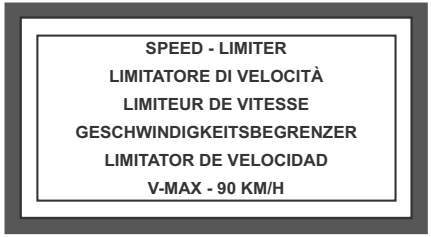
Switching off the system

Press LIMIT, the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limiter screen is hidden from the Driver Information Centre or LIMIT extinguishes.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have the system checked by a workshop.

Fixed speed limiter



If fitted to your vehicle, its speed can be limited to a fixed setting.

A label located in the passenger compartment indicates this maximum speed.
The fixed speed limiter is not a cruise control type function. It cannot be activated or deactivated by the driver during the trip.

NOTE

The maximum speed is originally set according to the regulations in force in the country of sale.
This maximum speed cannot be changed by the driver.
If you wish to modify this maximum speed, contact a dealer.

Cruise control

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 40 km/h (24 mph).
For vehicles with manual transmission, any gear has to be selected. For vehicles with automatic transmission, position **D** or the second or a higher gear in position **M** must be selected.
Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.
The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.
The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.
The status and preset speed is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Switching on the system



Press ASSIST.

Depending on version, either the cruise control screen or only ASSIST is displayed. ASSIST is grey indicating that the system is still not active.

Activation of the functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed as speed setting and activate the cruise control.

ASSIST changes from grey to green or white indicating that system is active. The accelerator pedal can be released. Alternatively, move the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease the speed and store this speed as speed setting. Cruise control is immediately activated if the thumbwheel is moved upwards or downwards. ASSIST changes from grey to green or white.

Setting speed by the driver



If the system is active, the preset speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new set speed for the cruise control. Depending on version, the traffic sign assistant has to be activated to detect speed limit sign.

When passing the speed limit sign

With activated cruise control, **OK?** is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

With activated cruise control, press **OK** on the steering wheel.

OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed.
While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed setting flashes.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press ||▶. Cruise control is in pause mode. ASSIST is illuminated grey. The vehicle is driven without cruise control. Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.
The cruise control may be deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- clutch pedal depressed for more than five seconds
- electric parking brake engaged

Resume stored speed

Press ||▶ or **OK**, the stored speed will be set.

Switching off the system

Press ASSIST, the cruise control mode is deselected and the cruise control screen is hidden from the Driver Information Centre or ASSIST.

System limitations

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic.
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using snow chains, nonslip covers or studded tires.

When driving down a steep hill, the system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary.
When driving up a steep hill or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

Fault

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have the system checked by a workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The adaptive cruise control is an enhancement of the cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain following distance to the vehicle ahead.



It uses a radar unit located in the front bumper to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

The adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle ahead, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.
If the vehicle ahead accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control progressively accelerates the vehicle to return to the stored set speed.
If the driver operates the turn lights to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle ahead to help passing it.
However, the set speed will never be exceeded.
If the vehicle ahead is moving too slowly and the selected following distance cannot be maintained anymore, a warning chime is given and a message is displayed. The message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle. On vehicles with manual transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until 30 km/h (18 mph). On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system can brake the vehicle until a full stop. Depending on version, the system can automatically accelerate the vehicle after a full stop.

⚠ WARNING

The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down.
If the brake lights fail, the system does not operate.

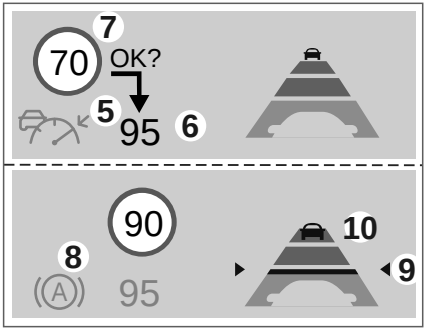
Steering-mounted controls



1. Selection/deselection of Cruise Control only or Drive Assist (depending on version)
2. Pause/resume Cruise Control at the previously saved speed setting
   Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop
3. Increase/Decrease the speed setting (if Cruise Control activated)
   Activation of Cruise Control in progress (if Cruise Control deactivated)
   Display and configuration of the inter-vehicle distance setting
4. Activation of Cruise Control
   Use the speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function

For more information on the **Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



5. Cruise Control activated (green)/ paused (grey)

6. Speed setting value

7. Speed suggested by the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function

8. Vehicle held stationary

9. Inter-vehicle distance setting

10. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Messages and alerts

NOTE
The actual order of display of the messages or alerts may be different.

90 (grey)	Cruise Control selected, but cannot be activated. All the operating conditions have not been met.
90 OK? (grey)	Cruise Control selected, awaiting confirmation for activation. All the operating conditions are met.
90 95 (grey)/ (grey)	Cruise Control paused, but cannot be reactivated. All the operating conditions have not been met.
90 95 (grey)/ (grey)	Cruise Control paused, awaiting confirmation for reactivation. All the operating conditions are met.
90 70 (green)/ (green)	Cruise Control active, vehicle detected.
90 95 (green)/ (grey)	Cruise Control suspended, following brief acceleration by the driver.



(orange)

"Take control"

- Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.



(red)

"Take control"

- **Take back control of the vehicle immediately:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



"Activation refused, conditions unsuitable"

The system refuses to activate Cruise Control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop & Go function



(green)/(green) The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds of stopping, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again if there is no target detected or if the target detected is far enough.
Beyond 3 seconds of stopping, the driver must accelerate or press (**2**) ||▶ to move off.

NOTE

If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

WARNING

While the vehicle is immobilized, the following recommendations apply:

- The driver should not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the boot.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
- Do not engage reverse gear.

WARNING

When restarting the vehicle, beware of cyclists, pedestrians or animals who are not taken into account by the system.
The driver must monitor their surroundings.

Switching on the system



Press ASSIST successively until the adaptive cruise control mode is selected.

The adaptive cruise control screen is displayed. The system is still not activated.

Activation conditions

The system can be activated if the following conditions are met:

- vehicle speed between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph) for vehicles with manual transmission, between 0 km/h and 180 km/h (112 mph) for vehicles with automatic transmission
- driver's door closed
- drivers's seat belt fastened
- **D** selected or second or higher gear engaged
- parking brake released
- brake pedal depressed if vehicle stationary

Activation of the functionality

If all operating conditions are met, **OK?** is displayed.

Press **OK** to store the current vehicle speed and activate the cruise control.

On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and a road element

are displayed in green. The accelerator pedal can be released.
Alternatively, move the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease the speed and store this speed. The cruise control is immediately activated if the thumbwheel is moved upwards or downwards. On the adaptive cruise control screen, the set speed and the road element are displayed in green.

Setting speed by the driver



The set speed can be changed by moving the thumb wheel to + to increase or − to decrease thespeed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.

Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

A detected speed limit can be used as new value for the adaptive cruise control.

When passing the speed limit sign

With activated adaptive cruise control, **OK?** is automatically displayed.

Press **OK** on the steering wheel to store the suggested speed.

The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

After passing the speed limit sign

With activated adaptive cruise control, press **OK** on the steering wheel.

OK? is displayed Press **OK** to store the suggested speed.
The suggested speed is shown as new speed setting.

Exceeding the set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the stored speed. If a slower moving vehicle is ahead, the following distance selected by the driver is restored.
While the set speed is exceeded, the set speed flashes on the adaptive cruise control screen.

⚠ WARNING

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre.

Resuming stored speed

Press ||▶ or **OK** to reactivate the adaptive cruise control at the stored speed.

Adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the adaptive cruise control allows to maintain the selected distance behind a braking vehicle until a complete stop is reached.
If the system has stopped your vehicle behind another vehicle, the green control indicator (Ⓐ) is displayed next to the set speed setting. This symbol notifies,

that the vehicle is hold automatically in stop position.

⚠ WARNING

While the vehicle is hold in stop position, the following recommendations should be followed:

- Do not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the load compartment.
- Do not engage the reverse gear.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.

Within three seconds after the vehicle has been stopped by the system, the vehicle slowly moves again. After three seconds, accelerate or press ||▶ to drive away. Pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle when driving away.
If the vehicle stays stopped for more than five minutes without any action of the driver, the electric parking brake is applied. Control indicator (Ⓟ) will illuminate. To release electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

When the system is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Be always prepared to manually apply the brake to hold the vehicle stationary.

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by adaptive cruise control. Always engage **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Setting the following distance

When the adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.
The following distance can be set to close (1 bar), normal (2 bars) or far (3 bars).
If the engine is running and the adaptive cruise control is switched on (grey) or active (green), you can modify the following distance setting:



Press the button to display the current following distance setting in the Driver Information Centre.
Press the button successively to select the required following distance setting.
The selected following distance is indicated by full bars on the adaptive cruise control screen.

⚠ WARNING

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the vehicle ahead

If the system detects a vehicle in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control screen changes accordingly.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press ||▶, adaptive cruise control is in pause mode. The preset speed is illuminated grey.
The adaptive cruise control is deactivated, but not disabled. The last stored set speed remains in memory for later usage.
The adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically in the following cases:

- brake pedal depressed
- traction control system or electronic stability control is operating
- reverse gear engaged, **N** selected or no gear engaged
- speed falls below 30 km/h (18 mph) for a vehicle with manual transmission
- risk of engine stalling in case of a vehicle with manual transmission
- clutch pedal depressed for more than 10 seconds
- electric parking brake engaged
- seat belt unfastened
- driver's door opened

Switching off the system

Press ASSIST successively to switch adaptive cruise control off.

Driver's attention

1. Use the adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
2. Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tire traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.
3. Do not use the adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.
4. Do not use the system when the spare wheel is in use.

System limits

⚠ WARNING

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

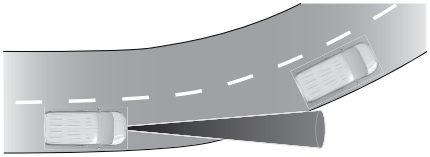
- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- The adaptive cruise control only considers traffic driving in the same direction.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians, cyclists and animals for braking and driving off.
- The adaptive cruise control does not consider stationary vehicles.

As the radar's field of detection is quite narrow, it is possible that the system may not detect:

- vehicles of reduced width, e.g. motorcycles, scooters

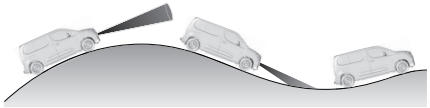
- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane
- vehicles entering a corner
- vehicles suddenly pulling out or in
- vehicles ahead braking excessively

Deactivate the system in the following situations:



- when driving in a tight bend
- when approaching a roundabout
- when following a vehicle not detected by system, e.g., a motorcycle
- when the vehicle ahead sharply decelerates
- when a vehicle cuts in sharply

Hill considerations



⚠ WARNING

Do not use the adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed.
When going downhill you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed.
Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

Radar unit



The radar unit is located in the middle of the front bumper.

⚠ WARNING

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a frontend impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind may be affected and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

⚠ WARNING

The usage of a license plate support on the front bumper may affect the proper radar unit functionality. When using a license plate support, follow the markings and indications on the front bumper.

Fault

In the event of an adaptive cruise control fault, a warning light is illuminated in the Driver Information Centre and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre accompanied by an audible signal.

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
Have the system checked by a workshop.
As a safety measure, do not use the system if the brake lights are faulty.
Do not use the system if the front bumper is damaged.

Collision Avoidance Assistance System

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This driving assistance system aims to:

- warn the driver that the vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.
- reduce the vehicle speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

NOTE

The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert.
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

NOTE

As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit.
This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every ignition cycle.



With the vehicle stopped: Press to access the ADAS or Driving/Vehicle (depending on version) application.



Deactivation of the system is signaled by the illumination of this telltale, accompanied by the display of a dedicated message in the cluster "**Automatic Braking deactivated**".

Operating Conditions and Limits

- Brake system operational.
- ASR / ESP system activated.
- Seatbelts fastened for all passengers.
- Stabilized speed on roads with no or low curvature.

In any situations with ignition on, where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the **ADAS**

or Driving/Vehicle touch screen application is recommended, for instance:

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Using an automatic car wash.
- Performing maintenance (e.g. Changing a wheel, working underhood…).
- Placing the vehicle on a roller bench in a workshop.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Following a damage of the windscreen close to the detection camera.
- Following a front bumper deformation, e.g. during parking (only for radar version)
- Attaching a trailer (particularly trailers without own braking system)
- Driving with snow chains

The system is automatically deactivated if:

- A spare wheel with a too small diameter is detected.
- A fault with the brake pedal switch or with the right or left brake lamp is detected.
- A fault in the sensors, in the electronic or in the brake system is detected.
- A severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment) was detected.

The system performance may be degraded or not available by:

- Sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- Windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers,
- damaged front bumper (or deformed in the past) or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- front camera out of regular position or missing cover
- brake discs cooling process is ongoing
- in curves
- system initialization process after battery disconnection
- sun or lights shining into the front camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

The system performance may be affected by:

- vehicle stability system in progress
- by vehicle battery voltage out of range
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres

NOTE

In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).

WARNING

It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

⚠ WARNING

The driver must not overload the vehicle, keep within the GVW and GTW limits, and load height limits for roof bars.

⚠ WARNING

ADAS sensor (e.g. front camera and/or radar) replacement and maintenance should be always done by a qualified workshop

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the collision alert sensitivity

The collision alert sensitivity determines the sensitivity with which the function warns for the risk of collision.



It is configured in the **ADAS** or **Driving/Vehicle** (depending on version) application.

1. Select “Assistance” then “Emergency Braking System”.
2. Select one of the 3 preset thresholds: "**Far**", "**Medium**" or "**Near**" or "**Far, Normal, Close.**"(depending on version)

The selected threshold is memorized, when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the setting chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes in account the difference speed between the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.


(orange)

Level 1: visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close. The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.


(red)

Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent. The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.


(red)

Level 3: a micro-braking may be given, confirming the risk of collision (optional).

While approaching a vehicle too quickly, the level 2 alert may be displayed directly without level 1 before.

ⓘ NOTE

Important: the level 1 alert depends on the collision alert sensitivity: "Far", "Medium" or "Near". It reacts only on moving vehicles. It is disabled automatically at lower speed.

It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

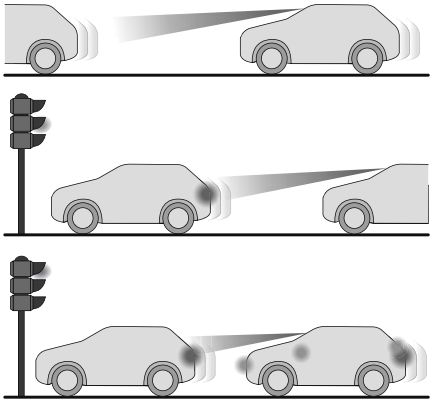
NOTE

If you select “FAR” in the **ADAS or Driving/Vehicle** (depending on version) touch screen application, then the system warns sooner. This increases the safety but increases also the amount of alerts, if the legal safety distance is not kept. To reduce the alert occurrence, you can change the setting to MEDIUM or CLOSE.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function increases the vehicle deceleration, if the driver brakes not enough to avoid a collision. This assistance is only provided if the driver presses the brake pedal and a collision is imminent.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called “automatic emergency braking”, intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quick enough. The system aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision if the driver fails to react.

NOTE

Automatic emergency braking may reduce the speed by a maximum of 50 km/h speed. Below a speed of 50 km/h, it may slow down to a complete stop.

Operation

The system operates based on the following conditions:

- The vehicle speed is between 5 and 82 km/h when a pedestrian or cyclist (versions with camera and radar) is detected
- The vehicle speed is between 5 and 85 km/h when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle speed is between 5 and 140 km/hwhen a moving vehicle is detected (versions with camera and radar)
- The vehicle speed is between 5 and 85 km/h when a moving vehicle is detected (versions with camera only)

Fault



Steady.
The automatic braking system is not available

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of workshop. Refer to the chapter “Operating conditions and limits”, to understand which

condition is not fulfilled. This telltale is exclusively used for the “automatic braking system”, e.g. the manual braking is fully granted, if only this telltale is illuminated.



Steady.
The automatic braking system is degraded or reduced.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a workshop. This may be caused by a reduced visibility (rain, fog, snow, blending by low sun…), infotainment issue or by a real sensor blockage. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.



Steady, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



If these telltales comes on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



These telltales illuminate on the instrument panel and / or roof module to indicate that the driver and/or passenger seatbelt is not fastened (depending on version).
The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seatbelts are fastened.

Brake Assist (BA)

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.
Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.
Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required.
Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Vehicle Stability Assistance System

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TCS)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip.
As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.
ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.
The TC is a component of the ESC.
Traction Control improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tire grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.
As soon as the driven wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.



ESC and TC are operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator extinguishes.
When ESC and TC operate, flashes.
After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.
Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Deactivation



Depending on version ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- by pressing the button the LED in the button illuminates.

A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when ESC and TC are deactivated.
ESC and TC are reactivated by pressing the button again, via the Info Display, by applying the brake or in the case that the vehicle is driven faster than 50 km/h (30 mph).
The LED in the button a extinguishes when ESC and TC are reactivated.
ESC and TC are also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system, the control indicator illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Traction Control Modes

This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.

ⓘ NOTE

For optimum grip on snow, it is recommended that you fit the vehicle with winter tires.
For optimum system performance, contact a dealer to choose the most suitable tires.

ⓘ NOTE

Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may

occassionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving:

- Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. fuel pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.
- Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
- Crossing a waterway

Operating modes

Snow

This mode constantly adapts the level of wheel spin to offer maximum traction according to the snow conditions (a lot of wheel spin in thick snow; very little on ice). The wheel spin is also adapted to the conditions encountered whendriving uphill by optimising the acceleration of the vehicle.
(mode active up to 80 km/h (50 mph))

Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much traction torque as possible. When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 50 km/h (31 mph))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 120 km/h (75 mph))

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

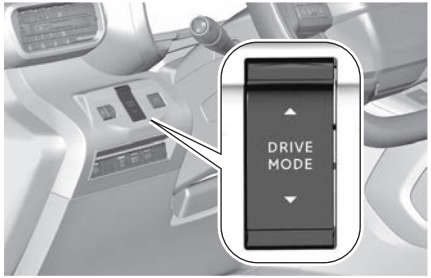
Activation/Deactivation



With a manual transmission



With a automatic transmission or drive selector



1. Press the **DRIVE MODE** button; the various modes are displayed on the touch screen.
2. Select **"Snow"**, **"Mud"** or **"Sand"** depending on the context on the right side of the window.
3. Close the window by clicking the cross.

The chosen mode continues to be displayed in the instrument panel.

- To deactivate, select **"Normal"** mode or any other driving mode.

The system is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Braking Performance Assistance System

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.
ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.
ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.
For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.
When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically the first time you accelerate.
After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.



Fault

⚠ WARNING

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Visibility Enhancement Assistance Systems

Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA)

The side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors. Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.
The system does not detect:

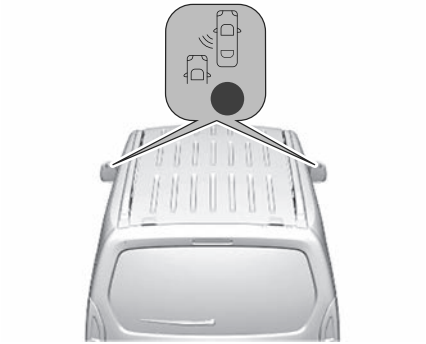
- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

Activation

The system can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.

Functionality



When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, an LED will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror.
The LED comes on immediately when being passed.
The LED comes on after a delay when passing another vehicle slowly.

Operation conditions

The following conditions must be fulfilled for proper operation:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes
- the speed of your vehicle is between 12 km/h and 140 km/h (7 mph and 87 mph)
- passing a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 10 km/h (6 mph)
- another vehicle is passing with a speed difference of less than 25 km/h (15 mph)
- the traffic flow is normal
- driving on a straight or slightly curved road
- the vehicle is not pulling a trailer
- the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow
- the warning zones in the door mirrors or the detection zones on front and rear bumper ar not covered with adhesive labels or other objects

No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects, e.g. parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs
- in very dense traffic, when moving vehicles might be confused with a stationary object
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner
- when passing or being passed by a very long vehicle, e.g. lorry, coach, which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision
- when passing too quickly

Deactivation

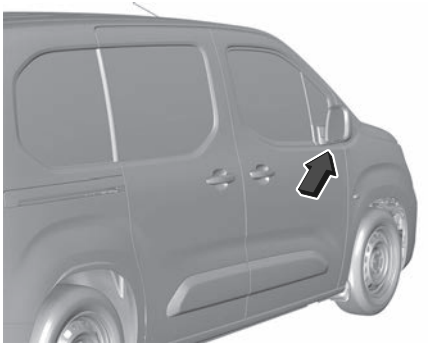
The system can be activated via the vehicle settings menu in the Info Display.
The state of the system is memorized when switching off the ignition.
The system is automatically deactivated when towing an electrically connected trailer.
Due to adverse weather conditions such as heavy rain, false detections may occur.

Fault

In the event of a fault, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre and a message is displayed. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Passenger side camera

The passenger side camera monitors the side of the vehicle.



The camera is mounted at the bottom of the exterior mirror on the passenger side.
The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Camera with view to the rear

The camera shows the blind spot area of the passenger side.
The passenger side view is displayed beside the standard rear view in the rear view display.

Switching on



The camera is switched on when the vehicle is running in forward gear and the passenger side view is selected from the rear view display or by pressing the button on the lever.

Switching off

The camera is deactivated when another view type is selected.

System limitations

The passenger side camera may not operate properly when:

- the surrounding is dark
- the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth
- there are extreme temperature changes

Lane Assistance Systems

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle crosses a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.
Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.
No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the

brake or accelerator pedal or heavy steering.
When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator rapidly flashes yellow.

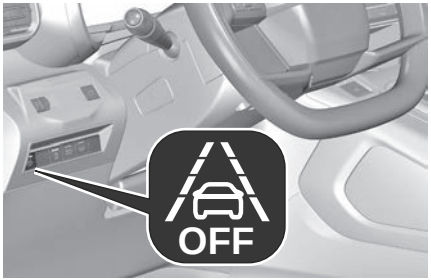
⚠ WARNING

This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

For a correct operation of the system, the following preconditions have to be fulfilled:

- vehicle speed must be between approx. 65 km/h and 180 km/h (40 mph and 112 mph)
- the turn lights are not activated
- no dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal
- lane boundaries can be clearly detected by the system
- the vehicle is not driven in a tight corner
- no system fault is present which prevents corrections

Activation



If the system is activated, the LED in the button is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press .
Depending von version, the system is automatically reactivated at the next vehicle start.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, press until LED in the button is illuminated.
LDW shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ WARNING

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization (through the Connect system) until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

Fault

In the event of a fault, and appear in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

System limitations

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.
The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens

- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tires
- roads with poor lane markings

Unavailability After Battery Reconnection

Lane Departure Warning can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

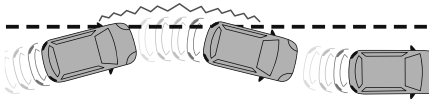
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version).
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 65 km/h and 180 km/h (40 mph and 112 mph).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held in both hands.
- Direction indicators not activated.
- ESC system activated and operational.

WARNING

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.
This warning light flashes during trajectory correction. Press the **" Navigation "** application to display the navigation home screen.

NOTE

The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system consid-

ers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Driving situations and related alerts

The system will inform the driver with a message and a chime if there is an ongoing correction for more than 10 s. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time.
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
OFF		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: - Speed below 65 km/h (40 mph). - No lane marking recognized. - ESC operation triggered. - "Sporty" driving.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 65 km/h (40 mph).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.

Function status	Display	Comments
ON	 **"Hold the steering wheel " or " Stay in lane"** (depending on version)	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system performance may be affected by heavy curves and construction areas.
The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Speed below 65 km/h (40 mph) or greater than 180 km/h (112 mph).
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a"space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.
- Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.
- Narrow lane detected.
- Driving in havy curves and construction areas.

⚠ WARNING

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- Insufficient contrast between the road surface.
- Lane markings worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud) or multiple (e.g. roadworks).
- Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
- Roads that are narrow, winding.

⚠ WARNING

Depending on version, only lane departure warning system is active, when a system fault is present, a spare wheel used, Electronic Stability Control is not activated or e.g a trailer is attached.

Risk of undesirable operation

- The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When the vehicle is being towed.

Activation/Deactivation

⚠ WARNING

Due to legal requirements,the system can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalization (through the Connect system) until the next time the ignition is reactivated. The system is automatically activated by default every time the engine is started.

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The system may also be activated in the Info Display via the vehicle settings .
LKA shall be deactivated by the driver when the vehicle is being towed.

Fault

In the event of a fault, and appear in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a display message and a warning chime. Seek the assistance of a workshop.
If a sensor is covered, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre and a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

If the audible warning system does not work properly or is not available, illuminates on the cluster and a message is displayed. Consult a workshop.

Unavailability After Battery Disconnection

Lane Keeping Assist can be temporarily unavailable or inactive when the power supply of the vehicle is reconnected again.

Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance System

Surround Vision

ⓘ NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info display, like a bird's eye view.

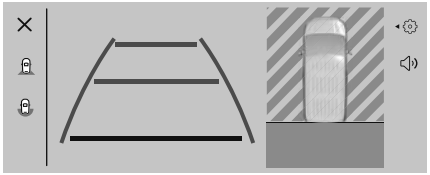
⚠ WARNING

The panoramic view system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view area, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the panoramic view system.
Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving. Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.
Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

The system may use:

- rear camera, installed in the tailgate
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper

Visualization on the Info Display



The screen is divided into four areas, from left to right:

- selectable views: standard and 180° view
- view visualization
- top view
- settings ⚙, muting and unmuting the audible signal

The parking sensors complete the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Settings

The following settings : can be adjusted volume of the audible signal.
The settings can be closed by pressing on the side of the Info Display or by pressing somerwhere else on the Info Display.

Activation

The panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging the reverse gear when the engine is switched on
- manual activation in the Info Display when the vehicle speed is below 16 km/h (10 mph)

Functionality

Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre by selecting a view.

- standard view
- 180° view

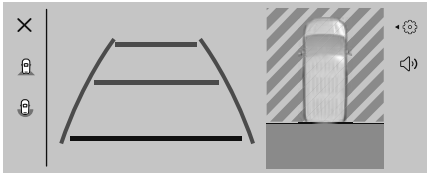
The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.
Standard view is enabled by default. This setting can be changed in the settings of the panoramic view system in the Info Display.
Depending on version, auto mode is activated by default. In this mode, the system selects the best view, standard or zoom, to display according to the information from the parking sensors.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Standard view

The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the position of the steering wheel.
This view is available in auto mode or in the view selection menu.

Guidelines



The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
This view is available from the view selection menu only.

Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the vehicle in its near surroundings. Thus, the vehicle can be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is displayed automatically as soon as the vehicle approaches an obstacle during a manoeuvre.

Auto mode

If the vehicle is equipped with ultrasonic parking sensors, the automatic view changes from rear view to a view from above, as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.
If the vehicle is not equipped with ultrasonic parking sensors, the view needs to be changed manually in the Info Display.

Deactivation

Panoramic view system is deactivated when:

- a certain forward speed is exceeded or, depending on version, if reverse gear is not engaged for seven seconds.
- by pressing the icon ⨯ in the left upper corner of the Info Display.

System limitations

⚠ CAUTION

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of all cameras always clean. For the rear view camera, there is a washer nozzle which will be activated when the rear window washer is operating.
If manually cleaning the lenses of the cameras, rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth.
Do not clean the lenses with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The panoramic view system may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense using the washer nozzle as described.
- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

⚠ CAUTION

It is very important that any repair to the surround vision system is performed accurately according to Manufacturer specifications. Otherwise, the system may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from the system.

Automatic Park Assist

ⓘ NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

General information

The rear system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

⚠ WARNING

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.
Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

Rear parking assist

The system warns the driver with audible signals and a display indication against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle while the reverse gear is engaged.
The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

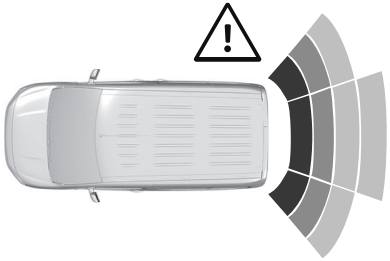
Indication

As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol P)) may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in **P** position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

NOTE

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display . When the obstacle is very close, ⚠ for danger is displayed.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)) flashes.
When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h (6 mph) the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

Front-rear parking assist

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication.
It uses two different audible signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.
The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper

Activation

After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Indication

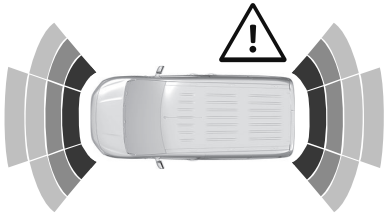
As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol P)) may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle.

If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in **P** position, or if no further obstacles are detected, no audible signals are given.

NOTE

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)) flashes.
When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h (6 mph) the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

Front-rear-lateral parking assist

The front-rear-lateral parking parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front, behind and at the sides of the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving audible signals and display indication. The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper and on the flanks of the vehicle.

Activation

When a forward gear has been engaged, the front parking assist is activated, as soon as an obstacle is detected in the front and the speed of the vehicle is below 10 km/h (6 mph).

When the reverse gear has been engaged, the rear parking assist and the front parking assist are activated. After engaging the reverse gear, an audible signal is given from the rear speakers and a display indication will be shown. If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Deactivation

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Indication

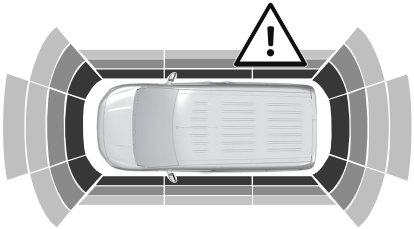
As soon as an obstacle gets closer to the vehicle, an audible signal is given and the symbol P)) may flash. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.
Audible signals are given via front or rear loudspeakers depending on which detected obstacle is nearest to the vehicle.

If the vehicle stops for more than three seconds, if the automatic transmission is in **P** position, or if no further obsta-

cles are detected, no audible signals are given.

NOTE

An audible signal is not given if the sound has been muted or if the display of the rear view camera indicated on the Info Display has been switched off.



Additionally, the distance to obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display.

Muting the sound / closing the display indication

If the audible signal is muted or the display of the rear view camera is closed and an obstacle gets closer, only the P)) flashes.
When engaging the forward gear and driving more than 10 km/h (6 mph) the sound and the display are automatically resumed.

System limitations

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, illuminates in the Driver Information Centre. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds.
In the case of a permanent fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.
Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

⚠ CAUTION

In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated.
In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged.
In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given.
Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.
If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.
Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all if illuminates or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.
Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.
Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.
Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow

size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.
Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle.
During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball bar. The driver has to consider this additional length.

NOTE

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).
Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.
Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

Depending on version, camera is mounted above the license plate in the tailgate / left rear door.

WARNING

The rear vision camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.
Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear vision camera. Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Camera at top of the left rear door



The view of the camera is displayed in the rear view display.

Switching on



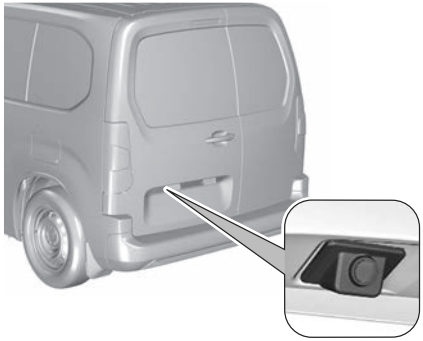
The rear view camera is switched on when the vehicle is running in forward gear and the rear view is selected from the rear view display or by pressing the button on the lever.

When operating with a trailer, the rear view is still available.

Switching off

The rear view camera is switched off when the rear view display is switched off.

Camera above the license plate on the tailgate



The camera is mounted in the rear bumper above the number plate.

Activation

Rear view camera is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guidelines

The first horizontal line represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of vehicle's rear bumper. The upper horizontal lines represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m.
The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.
Depending on version, the outer guidelines can also be static and the gap between both lines represent the vehicle width including the exterior mirrors. The inner curved guidelines represent the maximum steering angle in either direction.

Deactivation

The camera in the rear bumper is deactivated when:

- a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch
- a forward speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) is exceeded.
- by pressing the icon ⨯ in the left upper corner of the Info Display.

System limitations

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- surrounding is dark
- sun or beam of headlights is shining directly into camera lenses
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- camera lenses blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense using the washer nozzle as described.
- the tailgate will be opened
- vehicle is electrically connected to a trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- vehicle had a rear end accident
- extreme temperature changes

Driver's Attention Assistance System

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the

Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS) chapter.

The Driver's Attention Assistance System monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings, and on analyzing the face of the driver (depending on version).
The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

⚠ WARNING

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Driver Attention Warning by timer

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol on the instrument panel simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.
The counting of driving time alert is reset when:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened
- the driver's door has been opened.

Driver Attention Warning by Front View Camera

The camera detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.
If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests some level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, an alert is triggered.
The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 65 km/h (40 mph).
The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring. During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analyzed and no alert is given.
In some driving conditions such as poor road surface or strong winds etc., the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message, illuminates and an audible signal is given.
After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and .

Driver Drowsiness and Distraction with Driver Monitoring Camera

⚠ WARNING

To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 20 km/h (13 mph).
The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements.

The system does not record any video nor is it capable of identifying the driver. The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking
- microsleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given. Additionally illuminates.
If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. microsleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by and a more pronounced audible signal.
Drowsiness and microsleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.
The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application .
or

Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids.**

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator light on the instrument panel.

Reinitialization

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialized in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below below 65 km/h (40 mph) for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc.
- dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers

- the driver is wearing eyeglasses or sunglasses with certain characteristics (e.g. high infrared protection, etc.)
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

Fault

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audio signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the camera may be covered. Stop the vehicle and check, if the camera needs to be cleaned.
If still illuminates after cleaning the camera, consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.
illuminates on the cluster accompanied by a message indicating that the driver's face was not detected by the driver monitoring camera due to e.g. sunglasses.

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

The descent control system allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal.
The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain at that speed when the system is activated.
Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be apparent when the system is active.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the descent control system, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

Activation

ⓘ NOTE

If hill descent control is active, active emergency braking is automatically deactivated.

The systems is only available for slopes greater than 5%.
At speeds below approx. 50 km/h (30 mph), press . The system can also be activated when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running.
The control indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated in green to show the system is activated.
When the vehicles starts its descent, the system controls the speed of the vehicle; accelerator and brake pedals can be released.

- If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes rapidly.
- If the gearbox is in neutral or the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes slowly.

If the system is operating, the brake lights automatically come on.
If the speed exceeds 30 km/h (18 mph), regulation is paused. The indicator light in the instrument cluster changes to grey. However, the LED of the button is still illuminated.
Regulation is automatically resumed if the speed falls below 30 km/h (18 mph), the slope is greater than 5% and the pedal release conditions are met.

Deactivation

Press again until the LED in the button extinguishes. The green control indicator in the instrument cluster extinguishes, too.
If the speed exceeds 70 km/h (43 mph), the system is automatically deactivated. The LED in the button extinguisher.

Fault

If the green control indicator does not illuminate or flash after pressing the button, there is a fault in the system. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

⚠ WARNING

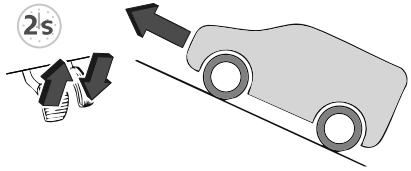
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator and the **P** indicator in the electric parking brake control illuminate steadily.

⚠ WARNING

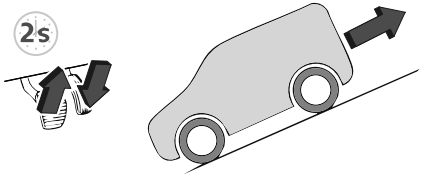
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:

- If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
- If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
- If mode **D** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time

when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Fault

If the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminate steadily on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Utility Assistance Features

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



This additional system recognizes these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.
As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

The selected display mode must be "**Driving**".

WARNING

The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Traffic Sign Assist (TSA)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

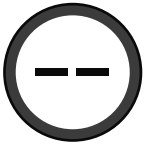
WARNING

The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Depending on version, are two different systems available.

Speed limit system 1

Using the camera at the top of the windshield and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system provides speed limits and end of speed limits in the Driver Information Centre.
The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.
If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 5 km/h (3 mph), the speed limit displayed flashes about **10 seconds**.

Updating navigation map data

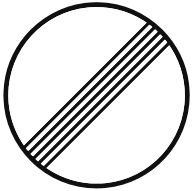
To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. A navigation map update is available twice per year.
Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

Speed limit system 2

This system displays permanently speed limit information in the Driver Information Centre independent of vehicle speed.
Providing the speed limit information involves the following systems, depending on version:

- camera at the top of the windshield
- vehicle's integrated navigation system
- telematics service

If traveling on a road with no speed restrictions, e.g., on German motorways, the following sign is displayed:



If no speed limit information can be provided, the following sign is displayed:



If a new speed limit is provided, a confirmation chime is given. The confirmation chime can be activated / deactivated in the vehicle personalisation or via a long press of the **LIMIT** button on the steering wheel.

If driving at a speed of at least 20 km/h (12 mph) and exceeding the speed limit, the speed limit displayed in the Driver Information Centre flashes after some time and an audible signal is given after some time. Time of occurrence varies. Both flashing and audible signal are terminated after a few seconds. Due to legal requirements, the audible signal can only be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation until the next time the ignition is switched on.
If the audible signal is deactivated, illuminates for a few seconds.
In case of a failure, illuminates permanently. Consult a workshop.

Operation conditions

To provide country-specific speed limit information, the vehicle needs to identify the country it is currently in. If a corresponding country list is available in the Info Display, the respective country has to be selected manually. Otherwise, the country is automatically selected.
To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.

NOTE

It is possible to report a permanent speed limit misinformation on our website.

Updating data

To maintain the performance of the system, the vehicle software and the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals.
A navigation map update is available at least once per year. Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.
For vehicle software update consult a workshop.

Other traffic signs

The system detects traffic signs and displays them in specific page of the Driver Information Centre.



This system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

System limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving with snow chains.
- The area of the windshield, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The vehicle ahead is creating road spray.
- Dazzling light, e.g. caused by the sun or artificial illumination is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Speed limitation is painted on the surface of the road.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged or have been removed.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- Depending on version, the navigation map data may be outdated.

CAUTION

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.
Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions.
The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.
When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

This system alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure. The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitial-**

ized every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.

It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialization request. It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

⚠ WARNING

The TPMS does not, under any circumstances, replace the driver's vigilance or the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens roadholding
- increases braking distances
- causes excessive wear on the tires
- increases energy consumption

ⓘ NOTE

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tire pressure label.

For more information on the **Tire Markings - Designations**, refer to the corresponding section.

⚠ WARNING

Checking tire pressures

This check should be done monthly when the tires are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 10 km (6 miles) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

ⓘ NOTE

Snow chains. The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Low Pressure Warning

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning light (!), accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

1. Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
2. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
3. Using a compressor, such as the one in the tire repair kit, check and adjust the pressures of all four tires when cold.
4. If it is not possible to do this check, drive carefully at reduced speed.
5. In the event of a puncture, use the tire repair kit or the light (depending on equipment).

⚠ WARNING

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tire.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

⚠ WARNING

When driving below 40 km/h (25 mph) or when using a dynamic driving style, the TPMS alert may be delayed.
After a sudden loss of pressure or tire blow-out, the alert is not immediately triggered. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.

ⓘ NOTE

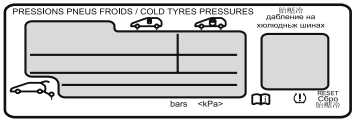
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialization

The system must be reinitialized after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tires, and after changing one or more wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tires are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tire pressure label. Check the pressures of the four tires before performing the reinitialisation. The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised via the Displays the menu for the driver assistant systems .

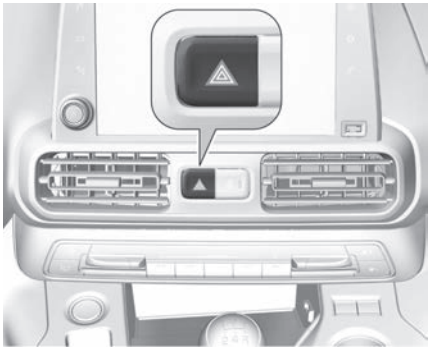
Fault

In the event of a fault, these warning lights illuminate steadily on the instrument panel.
In this case, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Hazard Warning Lights

Activating Hazard Warning Lights



Operated by pressing ⚠.
When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically, depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically, as soon as the vehicle is accelerated again.

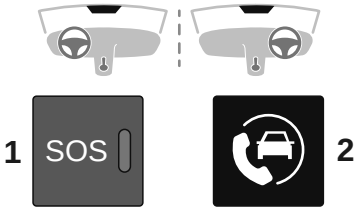
Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Assist And SOS

NOTE

In order to be available and operational, the system requires funcioning vehicle electric, moblie service and GPS or GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a back up a battery is used.



1 eCall (SOS)

2 ASSISTANCE

Emergency Call (eCall)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP).
A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button (1).

According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, GPS or GLONASS etc.
To make an emergency call manually, press button (1) for more than 2 seconds.
The lit indicator light and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services. [1]
The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services.[2]
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

NOTE

The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

WARNING

In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

Operation of the system

- Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator light illuminates red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
- The indicator light flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
- The indicator light is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
- If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also means that there is a system malfunction.

If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

NOTE

A system malfunction does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

NOTE

When an onboard system update is being performed, the eCall (SOS) function is not available.

NOTE

Data processing. All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) or by UK GDPR (Data Protection, Privacy and Electronic Communications) Regulations 2019 and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to

1 In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
2 Depending on the geographic coverage provided by the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.

protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.

The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the "112" single European emergency call number.
The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a time-stamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its time-stamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.
For more information on eCALL and Personal Data: **Customer Information** ⇨ 310.

NOTE

Data storage. Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

NOTE

Access to data. You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with the corresponding GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on the brand's website.

Manual Emergency Call

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button (1) in the overhead console for more than two seconds.
The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.
Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call.
The LED switches off.

Automatic Emergency Call (eCall)

Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Assistance Call

If the vehicle breaks down, press button (2) for more than 2 seconds to request assistance. A voice message will confirm that a connection is being established.

NOTE

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and dealer.

It can be configured in the **Settings** Info Display menu.

Deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the **Two** buttons, then press the "**ASSISTANCE**" button to confirm.

NOTE

Language depends on the geographic coverage of the eCall And Assistance Call systems and the system language of the vehicle.

NOTE

If you purchased your vehicle outside the dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required. In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

NOTE

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

NOTE

During an update to the vehicle's on-board telematics system, the ASSISTANCE system will be unavailable.

NOTE

If you benefit from the Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Warning triangle

This reflective, collapsible device is used to warn other road users when the vehicle is disabled or involved in a breakdown.

⚠ WARNING

Before getting out of the vehicle. Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Warning Triangle Kit

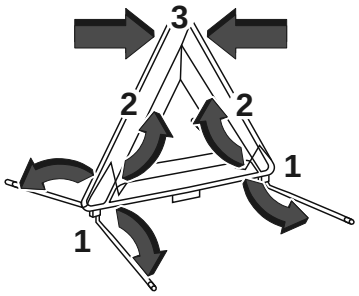


Depending on version, the warning triangle can be stowed in the load compartment. Secure it with the elastic straps.

Assembling The Triangle

For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to figure.

For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.



Placing the Triangle

Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

Wheel Changing Toolkit

BEV

With tire repair kit

The kit is located under a flap under the floor mats on the first row passenger side.

With spare wheel

The kit is located under a flap under the floor mats on the first row passenger side.
To access the tools:

1. Remove or fold up the floor mat.
2. Open the panel in the floor.

The jack is located in the passenger foot-well.

ICE

With tire repair kit

The kit is located under the under the passenger front seat.

With spare wheel

The jack is located under the passenger front seat.
The tools are located under the driver seat.
To access the tools:

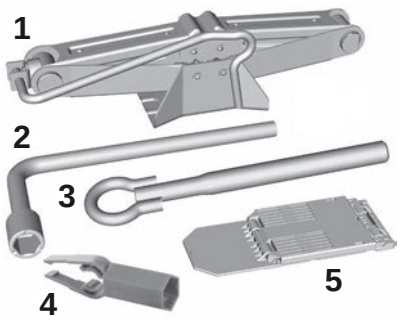
1. With non-adjustable front seat, lift the seat cushion by placing your hand between the cushion and the backrest.
2. With adjustable front seat, move the seat forward as far as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tire.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the Manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE, and also complies with UKCA requirement, as defined by the Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 No.1597.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

List of tools

The tool box is located either underneath the driver seat or the passenger seat. The jack is located underneath the passenger seat.



The tool box consists:

1 Jack

2 Wheel nut wrench

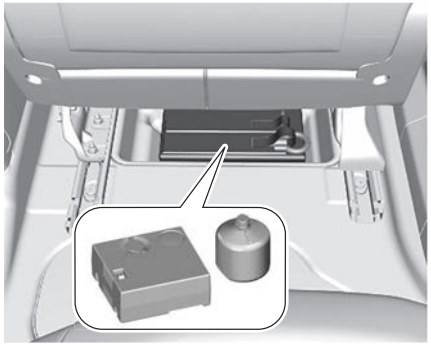
3 Towing eye

4 Cap removal tool

5 Chock

With tire repair kit

12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker. For temporary repair of a tire and to adjust the tire pressure.
The tire repair kit is located in the storage compartment underneath the passenger front seat.



Spare Wheel

ⓘ NOTE

Visit this link to view explanatory videos: https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

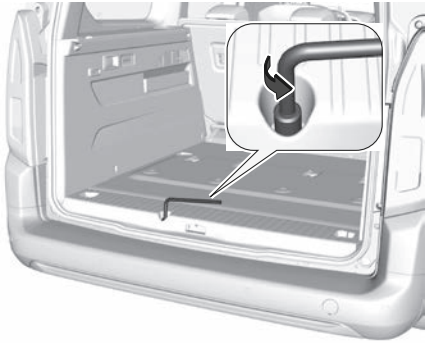
If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.
Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

⚠ CAUTION

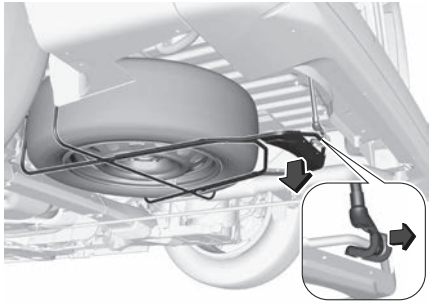
The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tires could affect driveability. Have the defective tire replaced as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is located in a holder beneath the vehicle floor.

1. Depending on the version, open the tailgate or the rear doors.



2. Fit the wheel wrench on one hexagon bolt. Turn it anticlockwise until the spare wheel holder is low enough allow the catch to be unhooked.



3. Lift the spare wheel holder and unhook the catch.
   Lower the spare wheel holder.



4. Remove the spare wheel.
5. Change the wheel.
6. Position the damaged wheel with the outside down in the spare wheel holder.
7. Lift the spare wheel holder and engage in the catch. The open side of the catch must point in the direction of travel.
8. Close the spare wheel holder by turning the hexagon bolt clockwise using the wheel wrench.

9. Stow wheel wrench in the storage.
10. Close the tailgate or the rear doors.

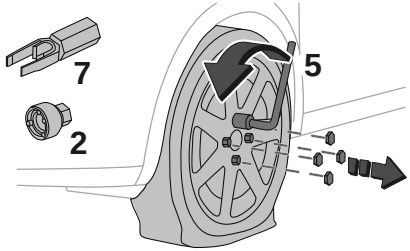
Only mount one temporary spare wheel. The permissible maximum speed on the label on the temporary spare wheel is only valid for the factory-fitted tire size.

NOTE

Wheel with wheel trim.

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling with both hands on one of the upper arms.

When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



1. If the vehicle has steel wheels, remove the wheel trim.
2. To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool (7) (alloy wheels).
3. Fit security socket (2) on wheelbrace (5) to slacken the security bolt.
4. **Slacken** the other bolts using the wheelbrace (5) only.

Wheel Removal

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

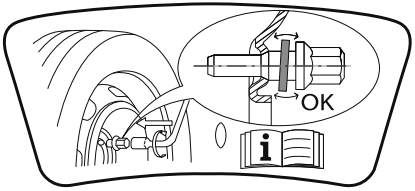
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straightahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
3. Place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
4. Remove the spare wheel.
5. Never change more than one wheel at once.
6. Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tire change.
7. The jack is maintenance-free.
8. If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (approx. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
9. Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
10. No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
11. Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
12. Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
13. Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

WARNING

Do not grease wheel bolts.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.



- Note that the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt if the wheel bolts for the alloy wheel rims are used. In this case, the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel.

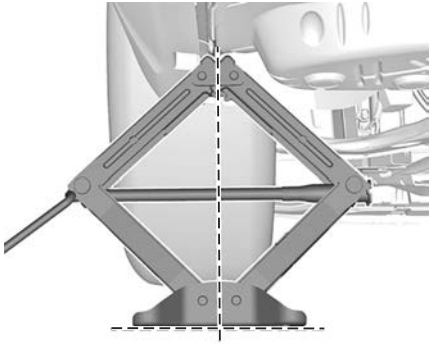
1. Disengage wheel bolt caps with the wheel bolt cover remover.
   Steel wheel rims with cover: Pull off the wheel cover.



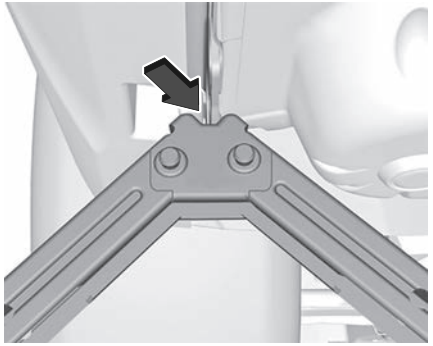
2. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.
   The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts first attach the adapter onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the tool box.



3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.

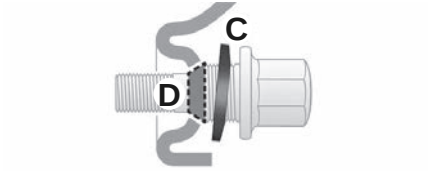


With the jack correctly aligned jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 115 Nm.
10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tire valve before installing.
    Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow the replaced wheel, the vehicle tools and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts.
12. Check the tire pressure of the installed tire and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Wheel Installation

Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel



If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **C** do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel.

The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **D** of each bolt.

1. Reverse the steps for removing the damaged wheel.
2. Tighten the bolts to approx. 115 Nm in a crosswise pattern.
3. Check the pressure of the spare wheel before driving off.

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme systems and make other vehicle modifications. Have the label with tire pressures replaced.

⚠ WARNING

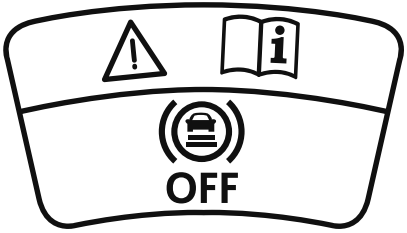
The use of unsuitable tires or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

After Wheel Changing

The punctured wheel cannot be stored in place of the spare wheel. Place it in the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorized speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 125 miles (200 km).
Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

⚠ WARNING

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tire pressure checked.
Have the punctured tire examined.
After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tire can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Tire Repair Kit

Tire Repair Toolkit

ⓘ NOTE

Visit this link to view explanatory videos: https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tire tread.
Minor damage to the tire tread can be repaired with the tire repair kit.

ⓘ NOTE

Damage which is either located on the tire wall or larger than 4 mm cannot be repaired using this type of kit.

ⓘ NOTE

The vehicle electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tire after a puncture.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).

Do not use for a lengthy period. Steering and handling may be affected.

In the case of a flat tire: apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.

Tire Repair Procedure

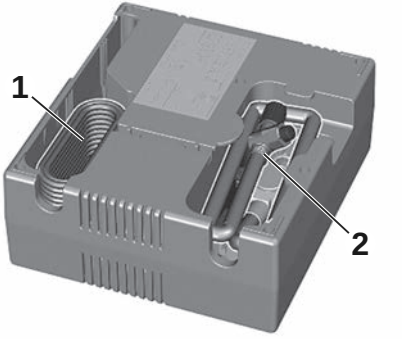
⚠ WARNING

Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tire.

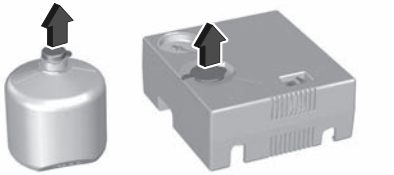
1. Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
2. Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lights, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the Country in which you are driving.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Remove the sealant bottle and the compressor.
5. Pull speed limit label from sealant bottle and place it in driver's visible area.

⚠ WARNING

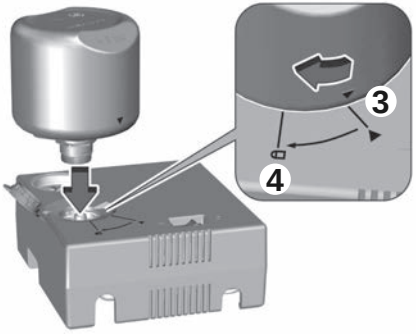
The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.



6. Pull out the electrical connection cable (1**)** and the air hose (2) from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

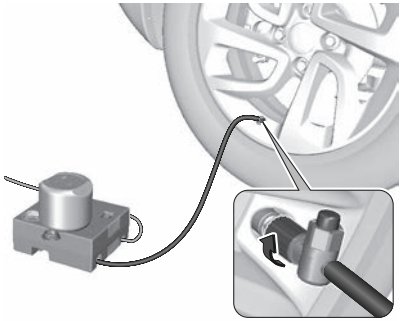


7. Remove the cap from the bottle of sealant.
8. Lift the protective cover on the compressor before installing the bottle of sealant.



9. Insert the sealant bottle in the compressor by aligning the triangle symbols **3** on the bottle to the one on the compressor.
10. Push down the sealant bottle and turn it until reached the lock position **4**.
11. Set the compressor near the tire in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.

12. Unscrew the valve cap from the tire to be repaired.

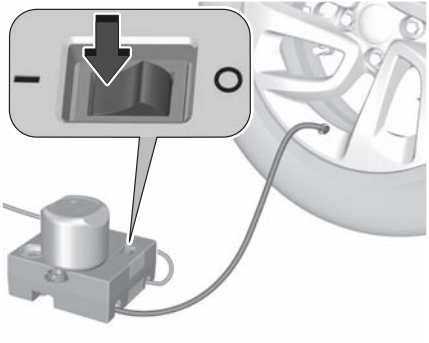


13. Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the tire and tighten it firmly.
14. Check that the compressor switch is in position "**0**".
15. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12V socket.

⚠ WARNING

Only the 12 V socket located **at the front** of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

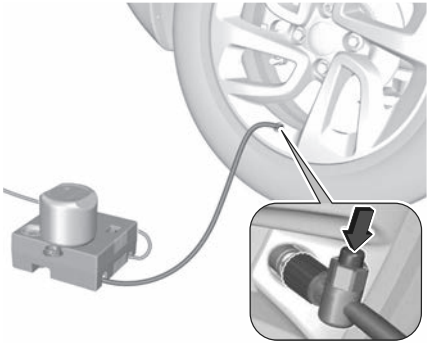
16. Switch the ignition on. To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric motor is ready.



17. Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position **"I"** until the tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

⚠ WARNING

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

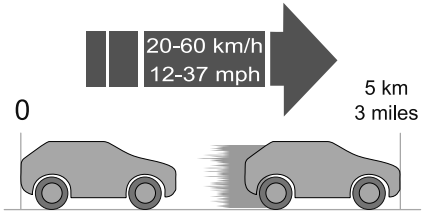


18. If needed, drain excess tire pressure with the button on the air hose. Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.
19. Set the switch to position "**0**".
20. Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.

21. Detach the tire repair kit.
22. Refit the cap on the valve of the tire.
23. Remove thte sealant bottle from the compressor and screw the filler hose to the free connection of the bottle to prevent sealant from escaping.
24. Stow tire repair kit.
25. Remove any excess of sealant using a cloth.

⚠ WARNING

The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



26. Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph / 20 and 60 km/h) to plug the puncture.
27. Stop to check the repair and the tire pressure using the kit:
    - If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a dealer to have the tire changed.
    - If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph / 20 and 60 km/h), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire.

ⓘ NOTE

The driving characteristics of the repaired tire are severely affected, therefore have this tire replaced.
If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.
The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 700 kPa (7 bar).
Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.
Replace the used sealant bottle.
Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.
The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

⚠ WARNING

With a tire repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
You must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tire changed.

Checking - Adjusting Tire Pressure

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
2. Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
3. Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
4. Check that the compressor switch is in position "**0**".
5. Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
6. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
7. Switch the ignition on.
8. Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label.

   To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.
9. Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**0**".
10. Remove the kit and stow it.
11. Refit the cap on the valve.

⚠ WARNING

If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tire is damaged; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Should the pressure of one or more tires be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.

For more information on **Tire under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Jump starting

⚠ WARNING

If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at:
https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/index.html

⚠ WARNING

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

⚠ WARNING

Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

⚠ WARNING

Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps!
Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Automatic gearbox. Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

BEV version

ⓘ NOTE

Flat accessory battery

It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

⚠ WARNING

Precautions before working on the accessory battery

Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

⚠ WARNING

Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

⚠ WARNING

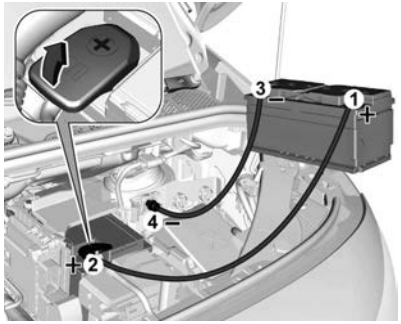
Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

⚠ WARNING

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.

Lead connection order

1. Connect the red lead to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery (1).
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery (2).
3. Connect the black lead to the negative (–) terminal of the booster battery (3).
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment (4).

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 s at an interval of 1 min.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

⚠ WARNING

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

BEV

⚠ WARNING

Starting the vehicle using another battery is prohibited.

Charging another vehicle

Procedure for starting another vehicle is identical to the procedure of "**Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery**", under the point of view of the assisting vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure the flat vehicle can be jump started (i.e. it is not a BEV vehicle).

12 V Battery Charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
- If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Follow the instructions provided by the Manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

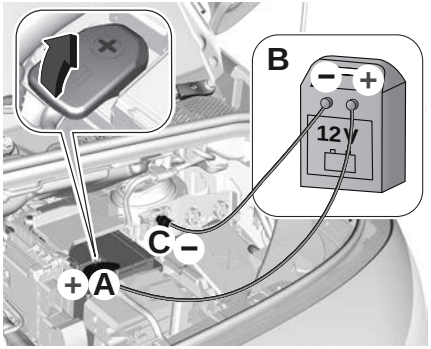
⚠ CAUTION

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

ⓘ NOTE

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

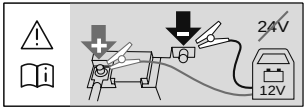
1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



3. Switch off charger (**B**) before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
4. Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
5. Lift the plastic cover on the (**+**) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
6. Connect the cables of charger (**B**) as follows:
   - the positive (**+**) red cable to the (**+**) terminal of battery (**A**)
   - the negative (**–**) black cable to earth point (**C**) on the vehicle
7. At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger (**B**) before disconnecting the cables from battery (**A**).

⚠ CAUTION

If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



Disconnecting - Connecting Battery

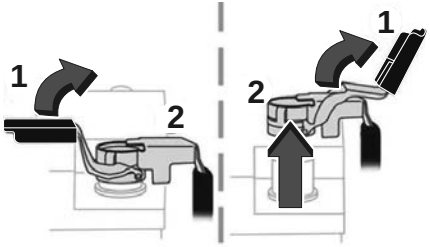
To maintain sufficient charge for vehicle starting, it is recommended to disconnect the 12 V battery if the vehicle will remain unused for an extended period. Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

1. Close all openings (doors, trunk, windows, roof).
2. Switch off all electrical devices (infotainment system, wipers, lights, etc.).
3. Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

When accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (**+**) terminal.

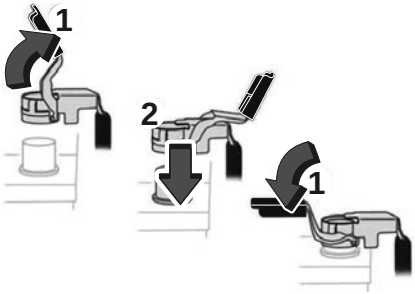
Quick-Release Battery Clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal (where provided).
2. Raise lever (1) fully to release clamp (2).
3. Remove clamp (2) by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Raise lever (1) fully.
2. Refit open clamp (2) on the (+) terminal.
3. Push clamp (2) fully down.
4. Lower lever (1) to lock clamp (2).
5. Lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal (where provided).

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:

- Electronic key
- Sunroof
- Electric windows
- Date and time
- Preset radio stations

NOTE

After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

Refuelling In Emergency

DANGER

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.
Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ DANGER

Fuel is flammable and explosive.
No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.
If a smell of fuel can be noticed inside the vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

⚠ CAUTION

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of vehicle.



If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the version, release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap or pulling at the right bottom corner.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

Depending on the version, place the key in the lock and unlock the cap.
To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be attached to the hook on the fuel filler flap.
Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.
To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.
After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

⚠ CAUTION

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.
Close the flap and allow it to engage.

Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps. Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Towing

NOTE

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

NOTE

In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

WARNING

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:

- broken down on a motorway or main road
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running
- towing with only two wheels on the ground
- four-wheel drive vehicle
- no approved towbar available

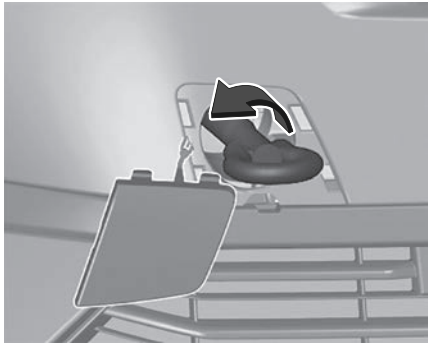
Towing the vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage.

1. Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools.



2. Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.
3. Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

4. Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windshield wiper.
5. Switch the selector lever to neutral.
6. Release the parking brake.

⚠ WARNING

With a manual transmission, move the gear lever into neutral.

With an automatic transmission, place the gear selector into position **N**.

Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

⚠ CAUTION

Never tow a vehicle equipped with All Wheel Drive (AWD) with the front or rear tires on the road. If you tow a vehicle equipped with AWD while the front or rear tires are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle could be severely damaged.

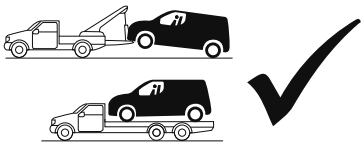
When towing vehicles equipped with AWD, all four tires must not be in contact with the road.

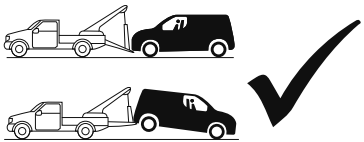
⚠ CAUTION

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

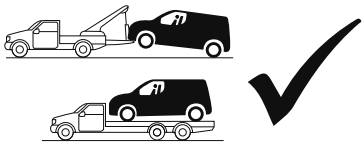
When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

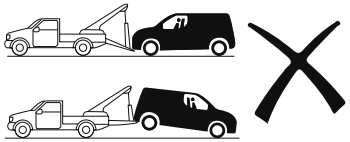
Versions with manual transmission (ICE)





Versions with automatic transmission (ICE / BEV)





Seek the assistance of a workshop. After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

NOTE

In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Towing another vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage.

1. Insert the screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap carefully.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools.



2. Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position. The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.
3. Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

CAUTION

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

4. After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
5. Insert cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

General information

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

⚠ CAUTION

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

⚠ CAUTION

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Very Cold Climate Covers

In order to prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan, it is recommended to install removable protection covers.
The protection covers must be professionally installed, consult a workshop.

⚠ CAUTION

The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The ambient temperature is above 10 °C.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle is driven at speeds above 120 km/h.

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



High voltage battery

The high voltage battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations are followed. If it becomes necessary to replace the high voltage battery, contact a workshop for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.

Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.
The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature. Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a workshop for customized service schedules.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet.
The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.
Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Scheduled Servicing

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Only use products recommended by dealer or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, dealer selects and offers very specific products.

Checking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer.

⚠ WARNING

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

⚠ WARNING

Take care when working under the hood, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

⚠ WARNING

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, using the dipstick.

To know how often the engine oil should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

⚠ WARNING

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Engine oil ⇨ 252
Fluids and lubricants ⇨ 304
Fluid capacities ⇨ 306

Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the **"MAX"** mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

⚠ WARNING

Clean the cap before removing it to refill.Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

ICE



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.
The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.

The level of engine coolant should be close to the "**MAX**" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of engine coolant is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of burning, if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

BEV

⚠ WARNING



Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Washer Fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a premixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

⚠ WARNING

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

⚠ WARNING

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine oil

Engine oil and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use.
The engine oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and engine oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the engine oil's thickness over a temperature range.
Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.
Checking Fluids Level ⇨ 257
Fluids and lubricants ⇨ 304
Fluid capacities ⇨ 306

Topping up engine oil

⚠ CAUTION

In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the engine oil. Multigrade engine oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Washer Fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

AdBlue®

General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueHDi) is a method to substantially

reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.
The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, nonflammable, colorless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

⚠ WARNING

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue®.
In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue®.
In case of contact, rinse off with water.

⚠ WARNING

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

⚠ WARNING

In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:

- Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
- Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cutout, if you are refilling at a service station.

The system only registers AdBlue® intermediate top-ups of 5 litres or more.

⚠ WARNING

If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "**Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**" – it is essential to add at least 10 litres.
Top-up detection may not be instantaneous after addition. It may take a few minutes of driving before the top-up detection is effective.

AdBlue® freezes at a temperature of approx. –11 °C. As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue® preheater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue® preheater works automatically.
In some circumstances below the mentioned temperature, an error message appears in the Driver Information Centre. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue® is liquefied.

ⓘ NOTE

Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue® is usable without quality loss.

The typical AdBlue® consumption is approx. 2 l per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

Level warnings

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue®, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

1. The first possible warning is **Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 2400 km (1500 mi)**. When switching on the ignition, this warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range. Additionally, control indicator will illuminate and a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions.
2. The next warning level is entered with a range below 800 km (500 mi). The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator will illuminate and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue® before entering the next warning level. When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 100 km (60 mi) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
3. The next warning level is entered with a range below 100 km (60 mi). The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on. Additionally, control indicator will flash and a chime will sound. Refill AdBlue® as soon as possible before the AdBlue® tank is completely empty. Otherwise, a restart of the engine will not be possible. When driving, the chime sounds and the message is displayed every 10 km (6 mi) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
4. The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue® tank is empty.

   Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning message will be displayed: **Top up emissions additive**:

   Starting prevented Additionally, control indicator u will flash and a chime will sound.
   Refill the tank to a level of at least 5 l of AdBlue®, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

High emission warnings

In the event of a fault with the emissions control system, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

1. If a fault is detected for the first time, the warning **Emissions fault** is displayed. Additionally, control indicators , and will illuminate and a chime will sound. Driving is possible without any restrictions. If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the emissions control system.
2. If the fault is confirmed by the emission control system, the following message will be displayed: **Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 1100 km (690 mi)**. Additionally, control indicators , and will illuminate and a chime will sound. When driving, the message is displayed every 30 s while the fault persists.
3. If the last warning level is entered, the following warning message will be displayed:
   Emissions fault: Starting prevented Additionally, control indicators , and
   will illuminate and a chime will sound. Consult a workshop for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Important: **in the event of a top-up after an AdBlue®** breakdown, you must wait about 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or bringing the electronic key into the passenger compartment**.
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste.
Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you purchased them.

Brake and Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Antifreeze Coolant

Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.
The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.
This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Engine Compartment

Access to engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

⚠ WARNING

Electric motor

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition, check that the **READY** indicator light is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.



⚠ WARNING

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode

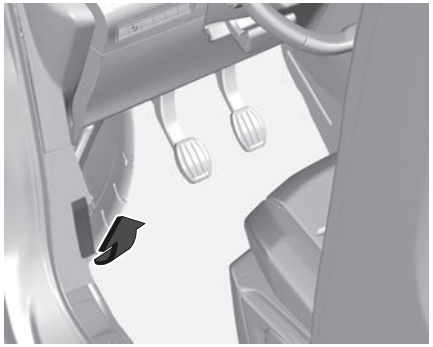
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of

the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

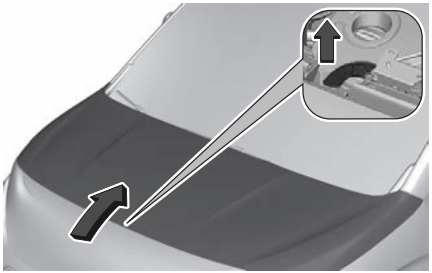


Opening

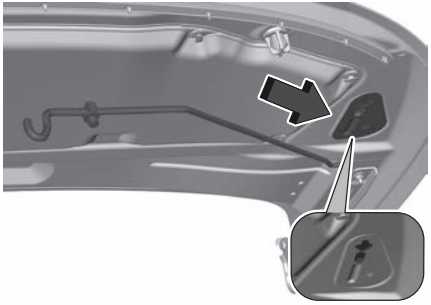
1. Open the left front door.



2. Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



3. Push the safety catch upwards and open the hood.



4. Secure the hood support.

Closing

1. Before closing the hood, press the support into the holder.
2. Lower the hood and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm).
3. Check that the hood is engaged.

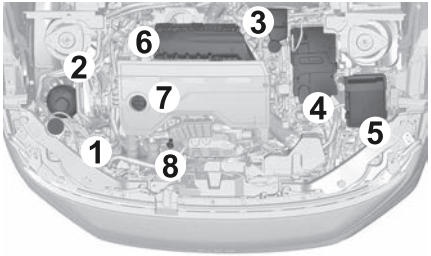
NOTE

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

WARNING

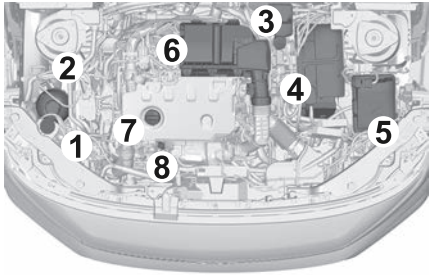
For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed while driving. Therefore, make sure that the bonnet is properly closed and that the lock is engaged. If you discover that the bonnet is not perfectly closed while driving, stop immediately and close the bonnet in the correct manner.

Petrol Engine



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuse
5 Fusebox
6 Air filter
7 Engine oil filler cap
8 Engine oil dipstick

Diesel Engine



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuse
5 Fusebox
6 Air filter
7 Engine oil filler cap
8 Engine oil dipstick

BEV Engine



1 Screenwash fluid reservoir
2 Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3 Brake fluid reservoir
4 Battery/Fuse
5 Fusebox
6 400 V electrical circuit

For more information on the **Charging system (BEV)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking Oil Level

- Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used.

A proper state of engine oil level is indicated by a message. If the engine oil level is low, the two indicators flash and a message is indicated.

- Confirm the engine oil level by using the dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.

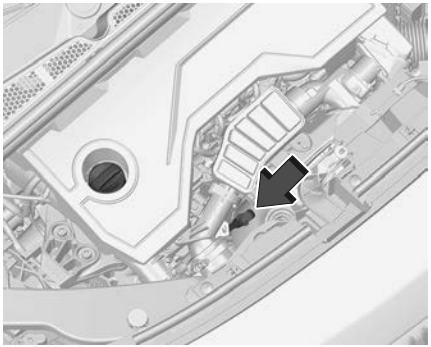
A fault of measurement is indicated by a message.
The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

- Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

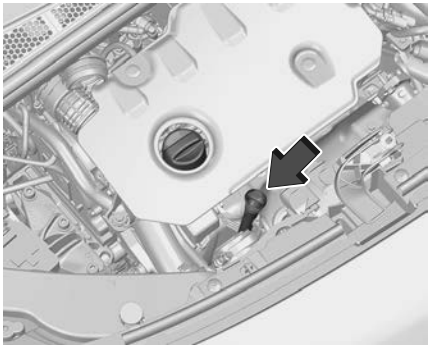
⚠ CAUTION

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.

Petrol version



Diesel version

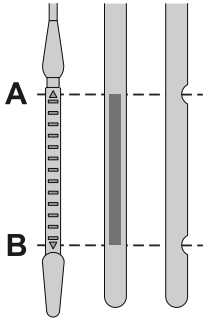


Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

1. Grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely.
2. Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.
3. Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (MAX)** and **B (MIN)**.



Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark **MAX**: contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

- below mark **MIN**: top up the engine oil immediately.

⚠ WARNING

The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

ⓘ NOTE

Within 30 minutes of adding oil, the oil level indication in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

⚠ CAUTION

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

⚠ WARNING

Oil grade. Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or a qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

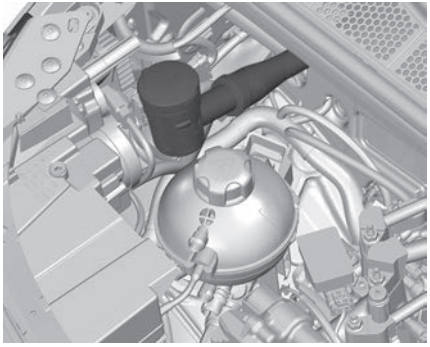
Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

1. Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
2. Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
3. Top up the level if necessary.
4. After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

Fluid capacities ⇨ 306

Adding Washer Fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windshield washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

The washer fluid level has to be underneath the **MAX** mark.

⚠ CAUTION

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides

protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

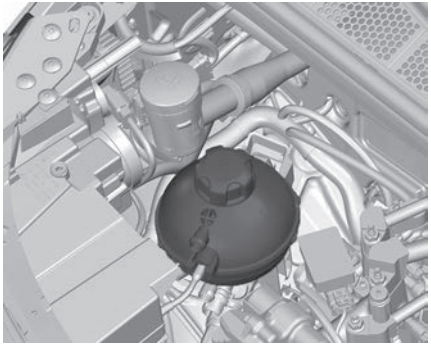
Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed windshield washer fluid, available through the dealer network.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

⚠ CAUTION

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).
The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windshield washer system.

Adding Coolant Fluid



BEV version

If the coolant level is at the **MIN** mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

⚠ CAUTION

Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damages to the high voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

ICE version

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

⚠ CAUTION

Only use approved antifreeze.

⚠ CAUTION

A too low coolant level can cause engine damage.

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠ WARNING

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly

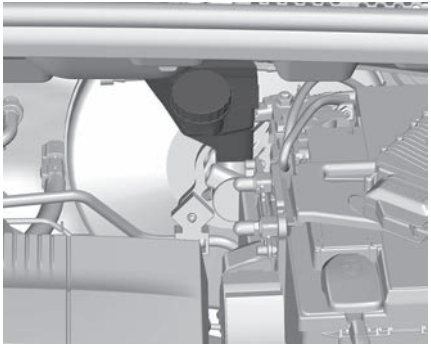
To top up, use an equal mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly.

Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Checking Brake Fluid

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **DANGER** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **DANGER**, seek the assistance of a workshop.

12 V Battery

The vehicle battery is maintenancefree provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point. Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste. Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

Symbols

The following safety symbols are visible over the 12 V Battery:



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.



Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.



The vehicle's battery contains sulfuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.



For more information, refer to the handbook.



Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

Replacing the vehicle battery

NOTE

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.
Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

NOTE

All battery information can be found online at
https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/en_GB/index.html
The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Charging the vehicle battery

WARNING

On vehicles with Stop & Start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger.
Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Discharge protection

Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Instrument cluster.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear window, heated steering wheel, etc. The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.
A message appears in the Instrument cluster.

Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Heating functionalities

NOTE

Individual heating functionalities, such as heated seats or heated steering wheel, may be temporarily unavailable in the event of electrical loading constraints. Functions will be resumed after some minutes.

Power saving mode

This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery.
These consumers, such as the Infotainment system, windshield wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc. can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

Changing into power saving mode

When power saving mode is activated, a message appears in the Instrument cluster indicating **Power saving mode.**

An active telephone call using the hands-free option will be maintained for around 10 minutes longer.

Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than 10 minutes to use the consumers for approx. 5 minutes
- for more than 10 minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

Engine washing

⚠ WARNING

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Vehicle Maintenance

Wiper blade replacement

Maintenance position of the wiper blades

⚠ CAUTION

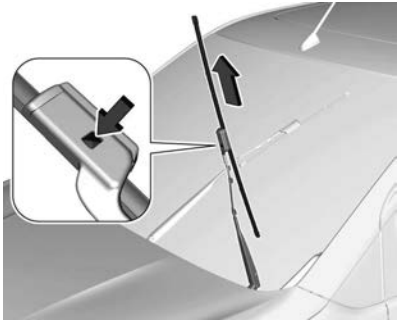
NEVER attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windshield.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Within 60 seconds, pull the right control stalk towards you.

The wipers will move to a vertical position for easy access.

Windshield



With the wipers in the maintenance position:

1. Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
2. Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.
3. Attach the wiper blade to the wiper arm and push until it engages.
4. Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windshield.

⚠ WARNING

Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windshield.

NOTE

Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

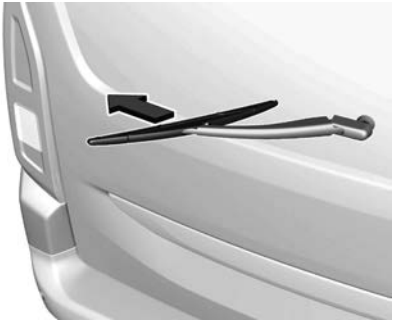
⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow the wiper arms to slam on the windshield. This can damage the blades and the windshield.

To return the wipers to the normal position

1. Gently place the wiper arms on the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Use the wiper control stalk.

Rear window



1. Lift the wiper arm. Disengage the wiper blade as shown in the illustration and remove.
2. Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.
3. Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid)

⚠ CAUTION

Only use AdBlue that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.
Do not use additives.
Do not dilute AdBlue.
Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

NOTE

Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger vehicles is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue® bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue® in bottles or canisters is available in many filling stations and can be purchased e.g.at dealers and other retail outlets.
Since AdBlue® has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

NOTE

Refill the AdBlue® tank to a level of at least 10 l, to ensure that the new AdBlue® level is being detected.

In case AdBlue® refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for 10 minutes making sure that vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. If AdBlue® refill is detected successfully, AdBlue® supplydriven warnings or limitations will disappear.

If AdBlue® refill is still not detected, seek the assistance of a workshop.
If AdBlue® must be refilled at temperatures below -11 °C, the refilling of AdBlue® may not be detected by the system. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue® is liquified.

NOTE

When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

The AdBlue® tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed.
The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.
The filler neck for AdBlue® is located behind the fuel filler flap, which is located at left rear side of the vehicle.
If the vehicle is equipped with an electronic key system, the fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Remove key from ignition switch.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.
3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.



4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue® canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to five minutes.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 s.
9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

NOTE

Refill AdBlue® with the engine switched off (vehicles with ignition switch: turn key to position 0. Vehicles With Power Button: **Start/Stop** button not pressed).

NOTE

Dispose of AdBlue® canister according to environmental requirements. Hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before AdBlue® dries out.

Cabin Air Filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

NOTE

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Engine Oil Filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Engine Air Filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving)**, change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

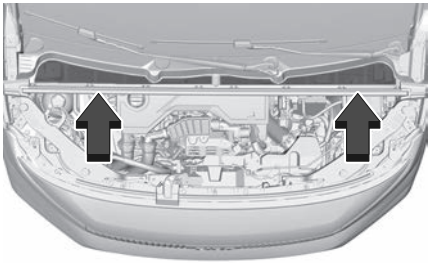
Drive Belt Inspection

WARNING

Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Air intake



The air intake in front of the windshield in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Compartment Filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

NOTE

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check

Diesel Filter

The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning light, accompanied by an alert message.
As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 60 km/h, with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm, for about 15 minutes (until the warning light goes out).
If it is not possible to reach 60 km/h, leave the engine running at idle for about 15 minutes, then drive with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm for 15 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not switch off the engine until the filter is fully regenerated; repeated intervals can degrade the engine oil prematurely.
Regenerating the filter while the vehicle is stationary is not recommended.

NOTE

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

NOTE

New vehicle

During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may

notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual transmission



The transmission does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic transmission



The transmission does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Fuses

⚠ WARNING

Changing a fuse

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop. The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTE

Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not approved by it and not installed in accordance with its specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Bulb Replacement

⚠ WARNING

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

If you need to replace this type of light, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before replacing a bulb, ensure that all exterior and interior lights and the ignition are switched off. All doors have to be closed.
Only hold a new bulb at the base.
Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.
Use only the same bulb type for replacement.
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

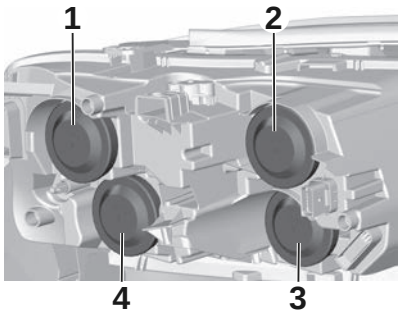
Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

Front Lights

Halogen headlights

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam, high beam, front turn light and daytime running light.



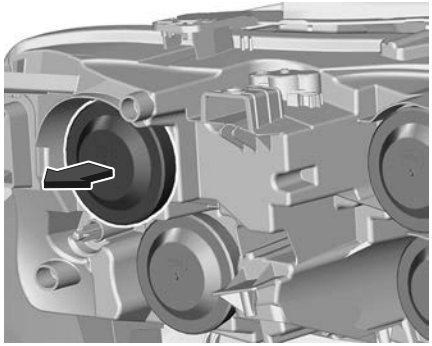
1 Low beam

2 High beam

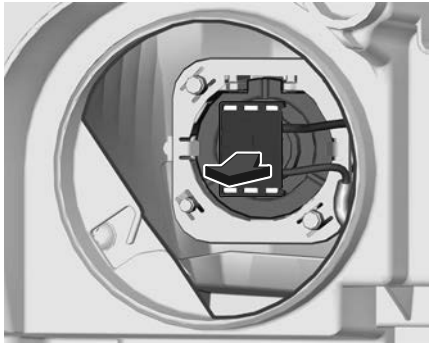
3 Front turn light

4 Sidelight / daytime running light

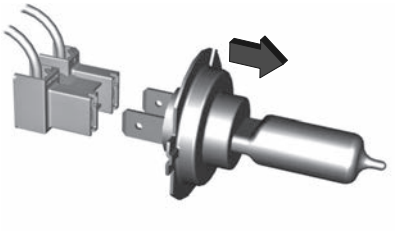
Low beam (1)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.

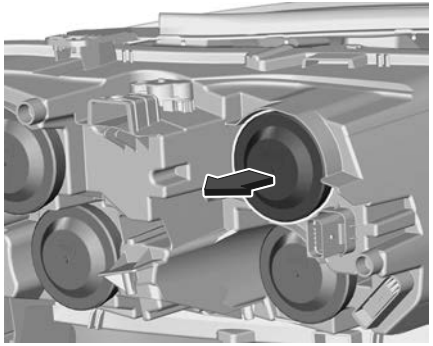


2. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

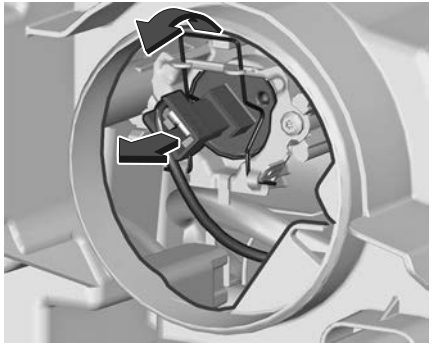


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

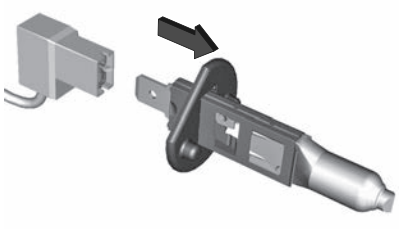
High beam (2)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.

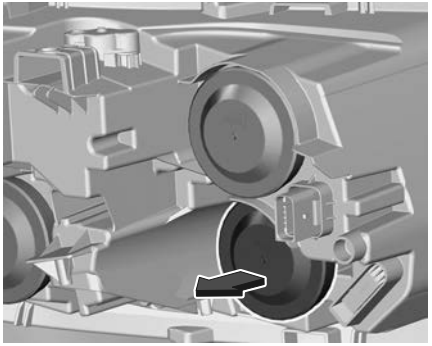


2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer by moving it to the right-hand side. Swivel the spring clip downwards.
   Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

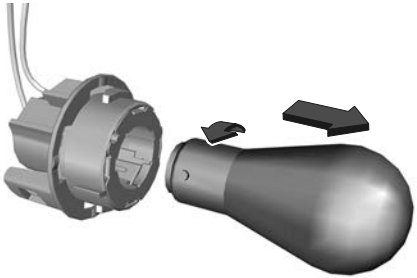
Front turn light (3)



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.



2. Rotate the bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.

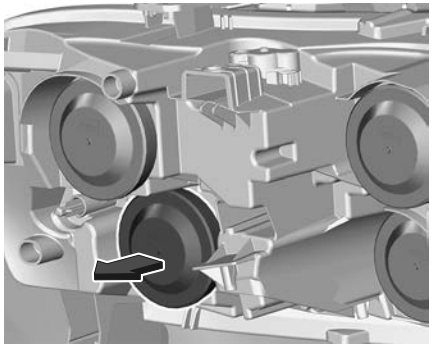


3. Rotate the lower bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and detach the bulb.
4. Replace and insert the new bulb into the bulb socket.
5. Insert the bulb socket into reflector housing and turn clockwise.
6. Fit the protective cover on.

Sidelight / daytime running light with bulbs (4)

NOTE

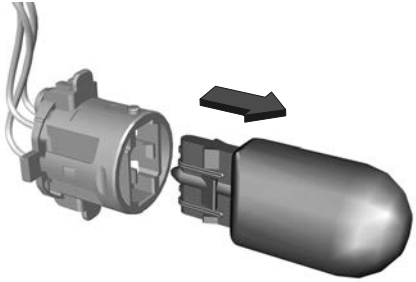
Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



1. Remove the protective cover by pulling.



2. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Fit the protective cover on.

LED headlights

> **NOTE**
>
> Daytime running lights are designed as LEDs and can not be changed. Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

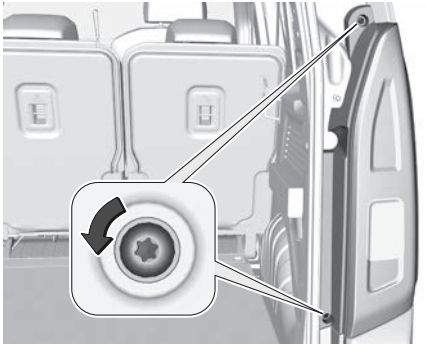
Foglights

Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

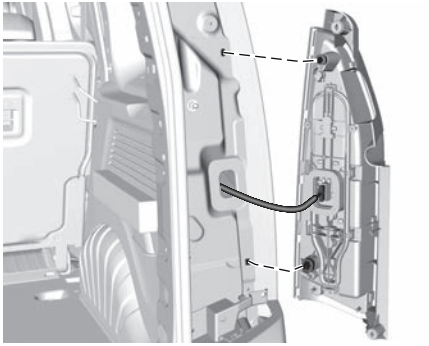
Rear Lights

Light assembly in the body

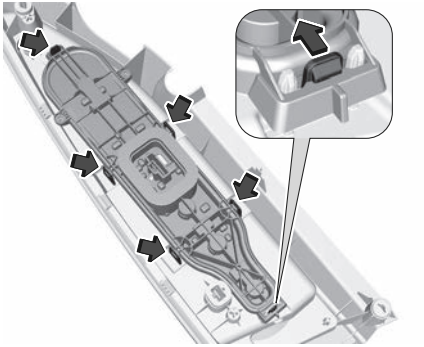
Vehicle with tailgate



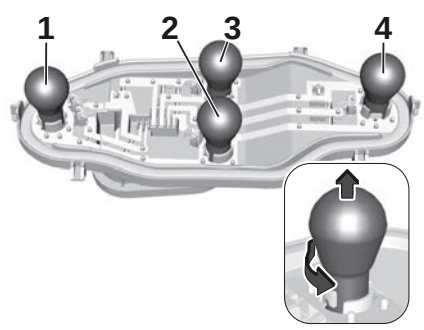
1. Unscrew and remove the two screws.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
3. Detach the cable from the retainer.

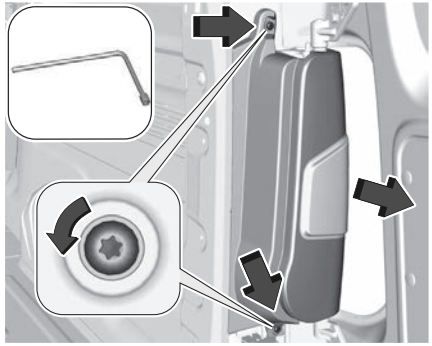


4. Press the retaining lug backwards, pull the bulb carrier and disengage the remaining retaining lugs.



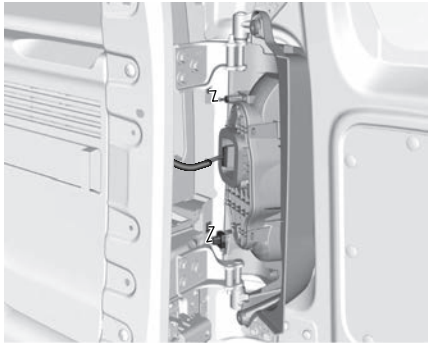
5. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier.
   Replace the bulb:
   - Rear fog light (1)
   - Reversing light (2)
   - Turn light / hazard warning flasher (3)
   - Tail light / brake light (4)
6. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
7. Attach the cable to the retainer.
8. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.

Vehicle with rear doors

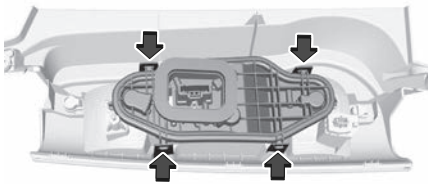


1. Unscrew and remove the two screws using the Torx key provided in your vehicle.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, please refer to the corresponding section.



2. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recess and remove. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.
3. Detach the cable from the retainer.



4. Disengage the retaining lugs to remove the bulb carrier.
5. Push the bulb slightly down, turn it and remove it from the bulb carrier. Replace the bulb (for bulb types please refer to **Vehicle with tailgate** paragraph).
6. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
7. Attach the cable to the retainer.
8. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten both screws.

3rd-brake light

The 3rd-brake light is designed as LED and can not be changed.
Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

Bulb check

Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

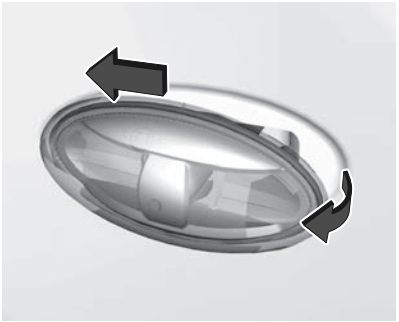
Interior lights

Have the following bulbs replaced by a workshop:

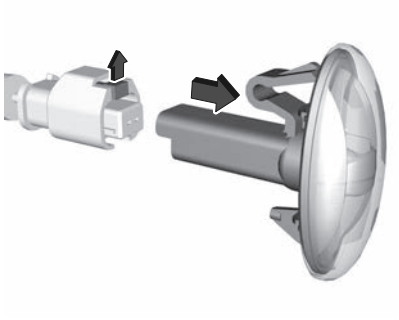
- courtesy light, reading lights
- load compartment light
- instrument panel illumination

Integrated Turn Signal Side Repeaters

To replace the bulb, remove the lamp housing:

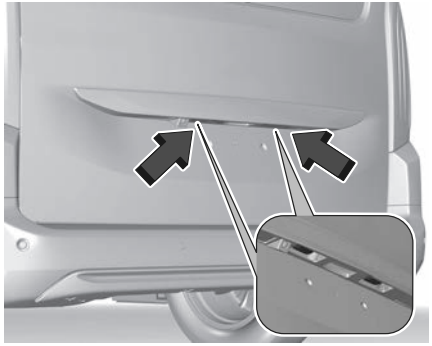


1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it at the back.

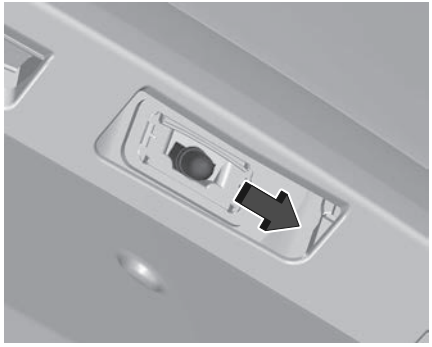


2. Press the retaining lug upwards and remove the bulb socket from the plug connector.
3. Replace the complete unit.
4. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

Number plate light



1. Insert a screwdriver in the recess of the cover and remove it.
2. Pull the bulb from the bulb holder and replace it.



Tires and Wheels

Tire Safety Information

Tire condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tire and wheel damage. Do not trap tires on the kerb when parking.
Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Tire Markings - Designations

E.g. **225/55 R 18 98 V**

225	tire width (mm)
55	cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width) (%)
R	belt type (Radial)
18	wheel diameter (inches)
98	load index (e.g. 98 is equivalent to 750 kg)
V	speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q up to 160 km/h

S up to 180 km/h

T up to 190 km/h

H up to 210 km/h

V up to 240 km/h

W up to 270 km/h

Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of your vehicle.
Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Directional tires

Directional tires should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

Winter tires

Winter tires improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tire speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tire pressure

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.
This also applies to vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system.
Tire pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tire pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- Depending on the vehicle variant identify the payload.
- Identify the respective tire.

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations.
For the tires approved for your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure.

⚠ WARNING

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

⚠ WARNING

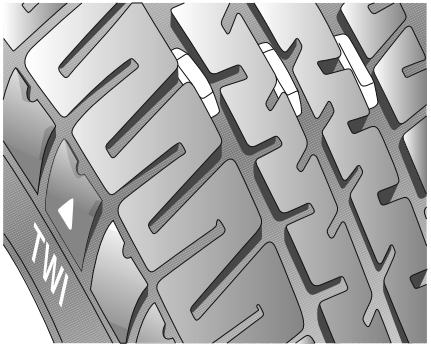
For specific tires the recommended tire pressure as shown in the tIre pressure table may exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire. Never exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire.

Temperature dependency

The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.
The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tires are checked.

Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals. For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tires on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.
If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.
Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every six years.

Allowed tire and rim sizes

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the tire deflation detection system and make other vehicle modifications.
Have the label with tire pressures replaced.

⚠ WARNING

The use of unsuitable tires or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Wheel Covers

Wheel covers and tires that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tire combination requirements must be used.
If the wheel covers and tires used are not factory approved, the tires must not have a rim protection ridge.
Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

⚠ WARNING

Use of unsuitable tires or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

Tire deflation detection system

The tire deflation detection system continually checks the rotation speed of all four wheels and warns on low tire pressure condition once vehicle is driving. This is achieved by comparing tire rolling circumference with reference values and further signals.
If a tire loses pressure the control indicator (!) illuminates, a warning chime is given and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. In this case reduce speed, avoid sharp cornering and strong braking.
Stop at next safe opportunity and check tire pressure.
After adjusting tire pressure initialise system to extinguish the control indicator and restart system.

⚠ CAUTION

Deflation detection system warns just about low tire pressure condition and does not replace regular tire maintenance by the driver.

In case of a system malfunction a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Set correct tire pressure and reinitialise system. If the failure continues to be displayed, contact a workshop. The system is inoperable when ABS or ESC has a malfunction or a temporary spare wheel is used. Once the road tire has been refitted, check the tire pressure with cold tires and initialise the system.

System initialisation

After tire pressure correction or wheel change, the system must be initialised to learn new circumference reference values:

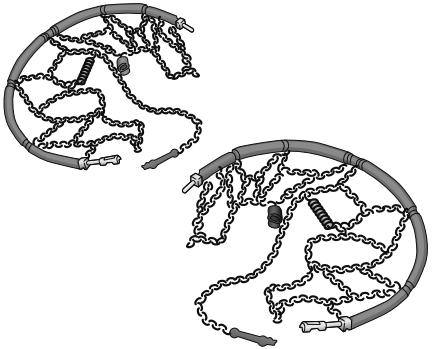
1. Always ensure that all four tires have correct tire pressure
2. Apply parking brake.
3. Depending on version, start the initialisation procedure: Initialise the deflation detection system in the Info Display.
   Initialise the deflation detection system in the vehicle personalisation .
4. Reset is confirmed by pop-up indication.

After initialisation system automatically calibrates to new tire pressures during driving. After longer drive the system will adopt and monitor new pressures. Always check tire pressure with cold tires.
System has to be reinitialised when:

- tire pressure has been changed
- load condition has been changed
- wheels have been swapped or exchanged

The system will not warn instantaneously on a tire blow out or a rapid deflation.
This is due to required calculation time.

Tire Chains



Tire chains are only permitted on the front wheels. The use of tire chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.
Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 9 mm to the tire tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

⚠ WARNING

Damage may lead to tire blowout.

Tire chains are permitted on all tires sizes allowed for the vehicle.
When fitting the tire chains follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the tire chains.

After having fitted the tire chains, stop the vehicle after having driven a short distance and make sure that the tire chains are correctly tightened.

Temporary spare wheel

⚠ WARNING

The use of tire chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Vehicle Storage

Long-time Storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. Wash the vehicle.
2. Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
3. Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
4. Fill up fuel tank completely.
5. Change the engine oil.
6. Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
7. Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
8. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.
9. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
10. Do not apply the parking brake.
11. Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
12. Wait four minutes.
13. Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
14. Lift the plastic cover of the vehicle battery's positive terminal in the engine compartment.
15. Raise the lever fully and remove clamp from the terminal.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Initialize the power windows.
2. Check tire pressure.
3. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
4. Check the engine oil level.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. Fit the number plates if necessary.

Long-time Storage (BEV)

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. Wash and wax the vehicle.
2. Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
3. Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
4. Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
5. Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
6. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load.
7. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
8. Do not apply the parking brake.
9. Open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

1. Charge the high voltage battery up to a charging level between 30 % and 50 % before long-time storage (more than four weeks).

2. Do not plug in the charging cable.
3. Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between −10 °C and 30 °C.
4. Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high voltage battery.
5. Remove the black negative (–) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (**+**) and negative (**–**) terminals in the engine compartment.
6. Every four to six months, check the battery's state of charge. If the charging level is below 30 %, recharge up to a level between 30 % and 50 %.

Putting back into operation
When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Recharge the high voltage **battery up to a charging level of 100 %** before starting the vehicle.
2. Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the 12 V vehicle battery. Initialise the power windows.
3. Check tire pressure.
4. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. Fit the number plate if necessary.

Bodywork-Exterior Care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

ⓘ NOTE

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).

When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

High Gloss Paint

⚠ WARNING

Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

ⓘ NOTE

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

ⓘ NOTE

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25 °C and 40 °C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not apply polish to the decals, risk of damaging or detaching the decals! Clean only with a soft, damp cloth.

Interior Care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Seat Belts Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.
If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

⚠ WARNING

A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. If you r vehicle is involved in a collision, or if you have questions regarding seat belt or retractor conditions, take your vehicle to a dealer or an authorized Manufacturer Certified Collision Care Program facility for inspection.

Plastic And Coated Parts

Clean interior plastic parts with a damp cloth (if possible made from microfiber), and a solution of water and neutral, nonabrasive detergent.
To clean oily or persistent stains, use specific products free from solvents and designed to maintain the original appearance and color of the components.

Remove any dust using a microfiber cloth, if necessary moistened with water. The use of paper tissues is not recommended as these may leave residues.

ⓘ NOTE

Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.

ⓘ NOTE

Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your new vehicle limited Warranty.

Instrument Cluster And Displays

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic. Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth.

ⓘ NOTE

Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner.
Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.
When cleaning the rear-view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth used. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

ⓘ NOTE

Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas.

Fabric Parts

Remove dust with a soft brush or a vacuum cleaner.
It is advisable to use a moist brush on when cleaning non-fabric upholstery.
Rub the seats using a soft microfibre cloth moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent.

Leather Surfaces

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

ⓘ NOTE

Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has
been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Floor Materials

⚠ WARNING

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, what can cause unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

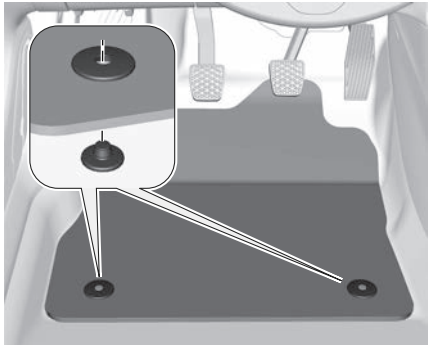
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

1. The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended to buy certified floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
2. Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
3. Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
4. Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.

Inserting and removing the floor mats

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.
To install the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.
3. Push the mat to the floor.



Removing

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Remove the mat.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

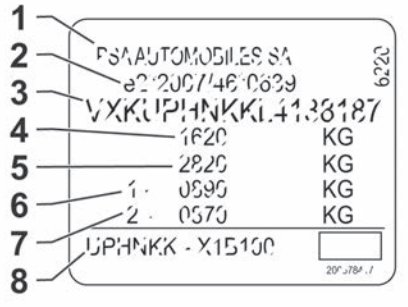
Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identfication Number (VIN)



The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen.

Identification Plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.
Information on identification label:

1 manufacturer

2 type approval number

3 vehicle identification number

4 permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg

5 permissible gross train weight in kg

6 maximum permissible front axle load in kg

7 maximum permissible rear axle load in kg

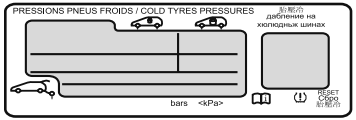
8 manufacturer address, vehicle specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.
Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories. Refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications.
Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

Engine identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code.
To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

Tire Information Label



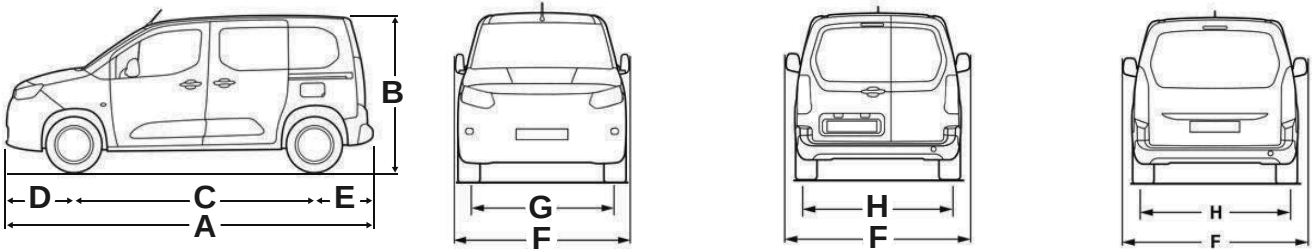
The tire pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tires and the correspondent tire pressures.
The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.
Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

Vehicle data

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dimensions

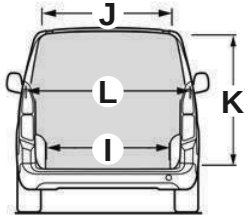
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle. The vehicle is available in two lengths (M and XL). Values are indicated in mm.
Actual values may vary, depending on wheel diameters, loads, engine, etc.
The height may vary, depending on wheel diameters.



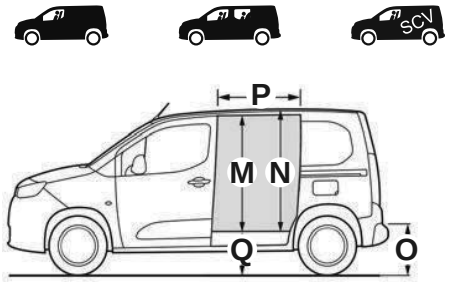
			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	**XL (L2)**
A	Overall length		4,403	4,753
B	Overall height	Standard version	1775 1812 (with roof railing)	1787 1816 (with roof railing)
		Worksite version	1,840 to 1,860	1,849 to 1,860
C	Wheelbase		2,785	2,975
D	Front overhang		892	

			Vehicle length	
E	Rear overhang	Standard version	726	866
		Worksite version		886
F	Width inc. mirrors	Folded	1,921	
		Unfolded	2,107	
G	Front track width		1,553	
H	Rear track width	Standard version	1,567	
		Worksite version	1,577	



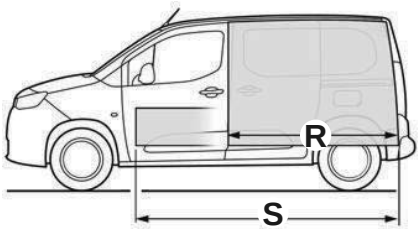


			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	XL (L2)
I	Clear opening height		1,229	
J	Maximum interior width	Without sliding side door	1,733	
		With 1 sliding side door	1,630	
		With 2 sliding side doors	1,527	
K	Clear opening height	With side-hinged doors	1,137	
		With tailgate	1,197	
L	Clear opening width		1,242	



			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	**XL (L2)**
M	Clear opening height		1,072	
N	Interior load height (varies depending on the angle of the floor and the curve of the roof)		1,200 to 1,270	
O	Loading sill height	Standard version	548 to 588	X
		Standard version with increased payload	568 to 578	561 to 565
		Worksite version	602 to 610	605 to 610
P	Clear opening width	Max.	675	
		Min.	641	

			Vehicle length	
Q	Loading sill height	Standard version	534 to 558	
		Standard version with increased payload	551 to 558	543 to 552
		Worksite version	574 to 581	575 to 587



			Vehicle length	
			M (L1)	**XL (L2)**
R	Interior floor length	With partition	1,817	2,167
		With ladder	1,790	2,140
S	Maximum loading length (With protective cover in place)		3,090	3 440
P	Clear opening width	Max.	675	
		Min.	641	
Q	Loading sill height	Standard version	534 to 558	

Engine Data

Petrol Engines

Engine	Turbo 110 S&S BVM6	Turbo 110 S&S BVM6	Turbol 130 S&S EAT8
Homologation	€6.3/ €6.4	€6ebis	€6.3
Engine/Transmission	EB2ADT - MB6 STTd	EB2LTE STTd - MB6	EB2ADTS-ATN8-STTd
TVV	EGHNP2 EHHNP2	EHHPJ	EGHNP3 EH2HNS2
Engine Displacement (cc)	1199	1199	1199
Power (kW)	81	81	95
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded

Diesel Engines

Engine	BlueHDi 100 BVM6	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	HDi 90 BVM5	HDi 90 BVM5
Homologation	€6.1 / €4	€6.3/ €6e/ € 7	€6ebis/ €7	€6.3 / €6e	€4	€5
Engine/Transmission	DV5RCF - MB6	DV5RCF - MB6 STTd	DV5RC-MB6-STTd	DV5RC-ATN8-STTd	DV6DRM - BE	DV6DR - BE
TVV	YHT	YHT	YHP	YHZ	9HP	9HP
Engine Displacement (cc)	1499	1499	1499	1499	1587	1560
Power (kW)	75	75	96	96	68	68

BEV Engines

		
Engine	ZEV 136hp	ZEV 136hp
Homologation	€6	€6
Engine/Transmission	MEL M3	
TVV	ZKU	
Power (kW)	100	
Battery Capacity (kWh)	52	42
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**	
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16	
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**	
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32	
Superfast charging	**Mode 4 (depending on version)**	
Direct current (DC) voltage	400	

Towing weights

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

⚠ WARNING

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

⚠ WARNING

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

⚠ WARNING

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (> 2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

MPV

The values indicated are the maximum allowed weights.

Length	Energy	Engine	TVV	Nb of Seats	Braked trailer (kg) on 10% or 12% gradient	Unbraked trailer (kg)	Nose weight
L1	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	5	1150	720	74
L1	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	5	1300	750	74
L1	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	5	1300	750	52
L1	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	5	1300	750	74
L1	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	5	1150	735	74
L1	DIESEL	DV6DRM / DV6DR	9HP	5	600	600	74
L1	BEV	MEL M3 (50 kW)	ZKU	5	750	750	50
L1	PETROL	EC5	NFJ	5	0	0	0
L1	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	5	1150	750	74
L2	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	5	1100	750	74
L2	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	5	1250	750	74
L2	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	5	1250	750	74
L2	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	5	1250	750	74
L2	BEV	MEL M3 (50 kW)	ZKU	5	750	750	50

L2	DIESEL	DV6DRM / DV6DR	9HP	5 or 7	600	600	74
L2	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	5	1100	750	74
L2	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	5	1140	750	74
L2	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	7	950	750	50
L2	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	7	1100	750	74
L2	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	7	1100	750	50
L2	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	7	1100	750	74
L2	BEV	MEL M3 (50 kW)	ZKU	7	0	0	0
L2	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	7	950	750	50
L2	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	7	950	750	74

LCV

The values indicated are the maximum allowed weights.

Length	Payload	Energy	Engine	TVV	Nb of Seats	Braked trailer on 10% or 12% gradient (kg)	Unbraked trailer (kg)	Nose weight (kg)
L1	1000kg	DIESEL	DV6DRM / DV6DR	9HP	2 or 3	600	600	74
L1	1000kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	2	900	690	74
L1	1000kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	3	900	700	74
L1	1000kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	2	900	710	74
L1	1000kg	PETROL	EB2LE	HPJ	3	900	715	74
L1	1000kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	2 or 3	900	750	74
L1	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	2	1000	720	74
L1	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	3	1000	730	74
L1	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	2	1000	720	74
L1	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	3	1000	730	74
L1	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	2 or 3	1000	720	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV6DRM / DV6DR	9HP	2 or 3	600	600	74

L1	650kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	2	1200	700	74
L1	650kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	3	1200	690	74
L1	650kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	2	1200	700	74
L1	650kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	3	1200	710	74
L1	650kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	2	1200	750	74
L1	650kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	3	1180	750	74
L1	650kg	PETROL	EC5F	NFJ	3	900	720	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	2	1350	720	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	3	1350	735	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	2	1350	710	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	3	1350	730	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	2	1350	720	74
L1	650kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	3	1350	730	74
L1	650kg	BEV	MEL M3 (50 kW)	ZKU	2 or 3	750	750	50
L1	800kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	2	900	690	74
L1	800kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	3	900	710	74
L1	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	2	900	710	74
L1	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	3	900	715	74
L1	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	2	1045	750	74

L1	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	3	1025	750	74
L1	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	2	1000	720	74
L1	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	3	1000	730	74
L1	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	2	1000	720	74
L1	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	3	1000	730	74
L1	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	2 or 3	1000	720	74
L1	800kg	BEV	MEL M3	ZKU	2 or 3	750	750	50
L1	Combi	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	5	900	730	74
L1	Combi	PETROL	EB2LE	HPJ	5	900	745	74
L1	Combi	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	5	900	750	74
L1	Combi	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	5	1030	750	74
L1	Combi	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	5	1030	750	74
L1	Combi	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	5	1000	750	74
L1	Combi	BEV	MEL M3	ZKU	5	750	750	50
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV6DRM / DV6DR	9HP	2 or 3	600	600	74
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV6DRM / DV6DR	9HP	3	600	600	74
L2	1000kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	3	850	720	74
L2	1000kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	2	850	740	74

L2	1000kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	3	850	745	74
L2	1000kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	2 or 3	900	750	74
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	2	1050	750	74
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	3	1030	750	74
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	2	1050	750	74
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	3	1030	750	74
L2	1000kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	2 or 3	1000	750	74
L2	650kg	BEV	MEL M3 (50 kW)	ZKU	2 or 3	750	750	50
L2	800kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	2	850	710	74
L2	800kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	3	850	720	74
L2	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	2	850	740	74
L2	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	3	850	745	74
L2	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	2	990	750	74
L2	800kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	3	970	750	74
L2	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	2 or 3	1200	750	74
L2	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	2	1200	740	74
L2	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	3	1200	750	74
L2	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	2	1000	750	74
L2	800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	3	1000	720	74

L2	800kg	BEV	MEL M3 (50 kW)	ZKU	2 or 3	750	750	50
L2	CrewCab - 800kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	5	900	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 800kg / 850kg	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	5	880	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 800kg / 850kg	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	5	915	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	5	1070	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 800kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	5	1070	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 800kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	5	1020	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 850kg	DIESEL	DV6DR	9HP	5	950	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 850kg	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	5	880	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 850kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	5	1030	750	74
L2	CrewCab - 850kg	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	5	1030	750	74

L2	CrewCab - 850kg	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	5	1000	750	74
L2	Combi	PETROL	EB2ADT STTd	HNP	5	920	750	74
L2	Combi	PETROL	EB2LTE	HPJ	5	920	750	74
L2	Combi	PETROL	EB2LTUDH2	HPR	5	900	750	74
L2	Combi	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHP	5	1035	750	74
L2	Combi	DIESEL	DV5RCf STTd	YHT	5	1025	750	74
L2	Combi	DIESEL	DV5RC STTd	YHZ	5	1000	750	74

Fluids and lubricants

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil that has been thoroughly developed and tested in order to meet the requirements of the Scheduled Servicing Plan. Constant use of the prescribed lubricants guarantees the fuel consumption and emission specifications. Lubricant quality is crucial for engine operation and duration.

⚠ WARNING
The use of products with specifications other than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine not covered by the warranty.

Use	Features	Specification	Original liquids and lubricants
Diesel engine lubricants DV5RC / DV5RCf / DV6DR / DV6DRM	**SAE 5W-30** ACEA C3	**FPW 9.55535/03**	**Quartz Mopar FPW 03**
Petrol engine lubricants EB2ADT / EB2ADTS			
Petrol engine lubricants EB2LTE / EC5F	**SAE 0W-20** ACEA C6	**FPW 9.55535/01**	**Quartz Mopar FPW 01**

If lubricants conforming to the required specification are not available, products that meet the indicated specifications can be used to top up; in this case optimal performance of the engine is not guaranteed.

Type	Features	Specification	Original liquids and lubricants	Application
Protective agent for radiators	Red protective with antifreeze action, based on inhibited monoethyl glycol with organic formula. Exceeds CUNA NC 956-16, ASTM D 3306 specifications.	**9.55523 or MS.90032**	Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop	Cooling circuits. Use rate 50% up to -35°C. Mixture with different formulation products not allowed. (*)
Diesel fuel additive	Additive for diesel anti-freeze, protecting Die-sel engines.	–		To be mixed with diesel (25 cc per 10 litres)
AdBlue® (UREA) addi-tive for diesel emis-sions	Water-AdBlue® (UREA) solution	**DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1**		To be used for filling the AdBlue® (UREA) tank on vehicles equip-ped with Selective Cat-alytic Reduction (SCR) system.
Windshield washer fluid	Mixture of spirits and surfactants. Exceeds the CUNA NC 956-II specification	**MS.90043**		To be used neat or dilute in screen washer systems.

(*) When the vehicle is used in particularly harsh weather conditions, we recommend using a 60% mixture of protective and 40% demineralised water.

Fluid Capacities

Engine oil

Engine	DV5RC DV5RCf	EB2ADT EB2ADTS	DV6DR DV6DRM
including filter [l]	3.95[4] 5.3[5]	3.5	3.75
between MIN and MAX [l]	1		

4) Personal car
5) Commercial car

Fuel tank

Petrol / diesel, refilling quantity [l]	61/ 53

AdBlue® tank

AdBlue®, refilling quantity [l]	17

Wheels and Tires

Tightening torques

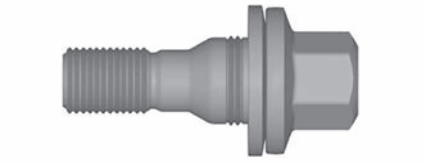
⚠ WARNING

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, tighten the wheel bolts manually at least for the first five turns.

Depending on the wheel rim material, two different bolts are available.



Tightening torque for alloy wheel rims is 115 Nm.



Tightening torque for steel wheel rims is 115 Nm.
Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheel rims.

Tire Pressures

(1) ICE. **(2)** BEV. **(3**) Wheel base L1. **(4)** Wheel base L2. **(5)** Load 650Kg. **(6)** Load 800Kg. **(7)** Load 950Kg. **(8)** Load 1000Kg. **(9)** Only Combi version. **(10)** Only for vehicles with 5 seats. **(11)** Only for vehicles with 7 seats. **(12)** Only for BEVs with 5 seats. **(13)** Only for BEVs with 7 seats.

					
	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)
205/60 R16	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)(10)	260/2.6 (38)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
		270/2.7 (39)(11)			
205/55 R17	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)(12)	260/2.6 (38)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
		280/2.8 (41)(13)			
		290/2.9 (42)(1)			
215/65 R16	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)	260/2.6 (38)(2)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
			240/2.4 (35)(1)		
215/60 R17	230/2.3 (33)(1)	230/2.3 (33)(1)	250/2.5 (36)(1)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
	250/2.5 (36)(2)	250/2.5 (36)(2)	260/2.6 (38)(2)		

	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)
195/65 R15	250/2.5 (36)	320/3.2 (46)	250/2.5 (36)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
205/55 R17	250/2.5 (36)(9)	270/2.7 (39)(9)	250/2.5 (36)(9)	290/2.9 (42)(9)	290/2.9 (42)(9)
205/60 R16	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)(5)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)	290/2.9 (42)
		290/2.9 (42)		320/3.2 (46)(5)	320/3.2 (46)(5)
215/65 R16	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)	280/2.8 (41)
215/60 R17	240/2.4 (35)(9)	240/2.4 (35)(9)	250/2.5 (36)(9)	320/3.2 (46)(9)	320/3.2 (46)(9)

		kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)	kPa/bar (psi)
195/65 R15	(1)(5)	250/2.5 (36)	320/3.2 (46)	250/2.5 (36)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
205/60 R16	(1)(3)(5)	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)	320/3.2 (46)	320/3.2 (46)
	(1)(3)(6)(8)	250/2.5 (36)	310/3.1 (45)	250/2.5 (36)	310/3.1 (45)	310/3.1 (45)
	(1)(4)(6)(7)	250/2.5 (36)	310/3.1 (45)	250/2.5 (36)	310/3.1 (45)	310/3.1 (45)
	(2)(3)(4)(5)(6)	250/2.5 (36)	310/3.1 (45)	250/2.5 (36)	310/3.1 (45)	310/3.1 (45)
215/65 R16	(2)(3)(4)(5)(6)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)	280/2.8 (41)

CUSTOMER INFORMATION

Declaration of conformity

All radio equipment provided with the car complies with Directive 2014/53/EU, UA.RED.TR, the French SAR Decree Law of 15/11/2019 and the UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) Certification in force in the United Kingdom.

NOTE

Declarations of conformity for radio equipment

The relevant certificates are available on the brand website: https://public-servicebox.opel.com/OVddb/OV/en_GB/index.html

Radars

ZF

Avenue du Technopole, ZAC Technopole BREST-Iroise, Secteur de la Pointe du Diable, 29280 Plouzané, France

- Operating Frequencies: 76.0 GHz - 77.0 GHz
- Max power: 16.5 dBm

Radio & Infotainment Systems

AIO

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert-Bosch-Straße 200, 31139 Hildesheim Germany

Operating Frequencies

- BT : 2402 MHz to 2480 MHz
- WiFi: 2402 – 2422 MHz, 5735 – 5755MHZ, 5735 – 5775MHz (some countries 5GHz band are not allowed)
- GPS, GLONASS : GPS L1: 1573.3-1577.5 MHz
- GlONAS: fc1 = 1602.0 MHz + k *562.0 kHz

Max power

- 4dBm max for BT transmit
- 17 dBm max fo 2.4G WLAN 802.11b/G/n, 6dBm max for WLAN 802.11a/n/ac . (if this point to our device power consumption, please use 120W max)

SPS-K9

Faurvia

Faurecia Clarion Electronics Europe, 40 avenue des terroirs de France, 75012 Paris, France

- Operating Frequencies:
  - emission freq: 2400-2483.5 MHz
  - reception freq: 2400-2483.5 MHz
- Max power: 7.07 dBm PIRE

IVI

HUAIDP10BY

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A

Viale Aldo Borletti 61/63, 20011 Corbetta (MI), Italy

Phone: +39 - 02 97227111

- Operating Frequencies: Bluetooth, Emission: 2400-2483.5 MHz / Reception : 2400-2483.5 MHz
- Max power: Bluetooth 4.0 dBm PIRE

RCE

Shenzhen Hangsheng Electronic Company Ltd.

Hangsheng Industrial Area,Fuyuan 1Rd. Fuyong Town,

Baoan District Shenzhen City, P R China

- Operating Frequencies: 2402 - 2480MHz
- Max power: -1.10dBi

Immobilizer

BSI

Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH

Am Technologiepark 1 D–42119 Wuppertal, Germany

Operating Frequencies:

- Min : 122,8 KHz
- Typ: 125 KHz
- Max: 127,2 KHz

Max power: 65W

TCM

Valeo Schalter und Sensoren GmbH

Laiernstrasse 12, 74321 Bietigheim-Bissingen, Germany

- Operating Frequencies: Min : 125kHz +/-3.2kHz (transmitter and receiver), 433.92MHz +/– 40kHz (receiver)
- Max power: N/A

BTA Emergency Call

TBATBP40B0 / TBATBP40B1

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A

Viale Aldo Borletti 61/63, 20011 Corbetta (MI), Italy

Phone: +39 - 02 97227111

Maximum Transmitted Power:

- GSM 900 => 33 dBm
- GSM 1800 => 30 dBm
- WCDMA Band I => 24 dBm
- WCDMA Band VIII => 24 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 1 => 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 3 => 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 7=> 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 8=> 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 20=> 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 28=> 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 38=> 23 dBm
- LTE FDD Band 40=> 23 dBm

Frequency band:

- GSM 900: 880 ÷ 915 MHz, 925 ÷ 960 MHz
- GSM 1800: 1710 ÷ 1785 MHz,1805 ÷ 1880 MHz
- WCDMA Band I: 1920 ÷ 1980 MHz, 2110 ÷ 2170 MHz
- WCDMA Band VIII: 880 ÷ 915 MHz, 925 ÷ 960 MHz

- LTE FDD Band 1 : 1920 ÷ 1980 MHz, 2110 ÷ 2170 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 3: 1710 ÷ 1785 MHz,1805 ÷ 1880 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 7: 2500 ÷ 2570 MHz,2620 ÷ 2690 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 8: 880 ÷ 915 MHz, 925 ÷ 960 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 20: 832 ÷ 862 MHz, 791 ÷ 821 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 28: 703 ÷ 748 MHz, 758 ÷ 803 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 38: 2570÷2620 MHz
- LTE FDD Band 40: 2300÷2400 MHz

Telematic box

BSRF

Continental Automotive GmbH

Siemensstrasse 12, 93055 Regensburg, Germany

Operating Frequencies:

- FM: 87,5 - 108 MHZ
- AM: 148,5 - 283,5 kHZ, 526,5 - 1606,5 kHz
- DAB : 174 - 240 MHz
- WIFI: 2,4GHz et 5GHz
- LTE (1.4 MHz 3 MHz 5 MHz 10 MHz 15 MHz 20 MHz)
- GNSS: 1559-1610 MHz

Max power: GSM (33 dBm +/– 2 dB), LTE/WCDMA (23 dBm +/– 2 dB)

RTBM

FIH Co., Ltd

No.4, Minsheng St., Tucheng Dist., 236 New Taipei City, Taiwan

- Wi-Fi :

  802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz)

  - Frequencies: 2412 – 2472 MHz
  - Max power: 18.83 dBm

  802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz):

  - Frequencies: 5180 – 5240 MHz
  - Max power: 15.99 dBm

- **SRD**:
  - Frequencies: 5745 – 5825 MHz
  - Max power: 13.93 dBm
- **GSM 900**:
  - Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (émission), 925–960 MHz (réception)
  - Max power: 33 dBm (valeur nominale)
- **GSM 1800**:
  - Frequencies: 1710–1785 MHz (émission), 1805–1880 MHz (réception)
  - Max power: 30 dBm (valeur nominale)
- **WCDMA Band I**:
  - Frequencies: 1920–1980 MHz (émission), 2110–2170 MHz (réception)
  - Max power: 24 dBm (valeur nominale)
- **WCDMA Band VIII**:
  - Frequencies: 880–915 MHz (émission), 925–960 MHz (réception)
  - Max power**:** 24 dBm
- **LTE FDD Band 1**:
  - Frequencies**:** 1920–1980 MHz (émission), 2110–2170 MHz (réception)
  - Max power**:** 23 dBm
- **LTE FDD Band 3**:
  - Frequencies**:** 1710–1785 MHz (émission), 1805–1880 MHz (réception)
  - Max power**:** 23 dBm

- **LTE FDD Band 7**:
  - Frequencies**:** 2500–2570 MHz (émission), 2620–2690 MHz (réception)
  - Max power**:** 23 dBm
- **LTE FDD Band 8**:
  - Frequencies**:** 880–915 MHz (émission), 925–960 MHz (réception)
  - Max power**:** 23 dBm
- **LTE FDD Band 20**:
  - Frequencies**:** 832–862 MHz (émission), 791–821 MHz (réception)
  - Max power **:** 23 dBm
- **LTE FDD Band 28**:
  - Frequencies**:** 703–748 MHz (émission), 758–803 MHz (réception)
  - Max power**:** 23 dBm

Telecomand & telemetry

Valeo Comfort and Driving Assistance

76, rue Auguste Perret 94046 Créteil - CEDEX, France

- Operating Frequencies: 433,05… 434,79MHz | 125kHz 2402… 2480MHz
- Max power: 10 dBm /-6,85 dBm | 125kHz: -7,3 dBm

Radio Antenna

Fuba Automotive Electronic GmbH

TecCenter, 31162 Bad Saizdetfurth, Germany

- Operating Frequencies:
  - GNSS: 1164-1215 MHz max LNA gain 22 dB
  - GNSS: 1559-1605 MHz max LNA gain 22 dB
- Max power: 5 dBi

Wireless Charger

Adayo

No.1 North Shangxia Road, Dongjiang Hi-tech Industry Park,Huizhou, Guangdong Province, 516005, P R China

- Operating Frequencies: 127.7kHz
- Max power: 15W

ICASA type approval numbers

List of all Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) type approval numbers:

- TA-2016/121, TA-2016/3261
- TA-2017/2387, TA-2017/2745
- TA-2013/430, TA-2017/1106
- TA-2016/929, TA-2017/3180

Fuel Consumption And CO_2 Emissions

The fuel consumption and the range of the vehicle were not available at time of printing.
For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.
The determination of fuel consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).
The specification of CO_2 emission is also a constituent of the directive.
The figures given must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle.
Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.
All values are based on the EU base model with standard equipment.
The calculation of fuel consumption takes into account the vehicle's kerb weight, ascertained in accordance with

the regulations. Optional equipment may result in slightly higher fuel consumption and CO_2 emission levels and a lower maximum speed.

Disposal Prescriptions

Depending on version, the Manufacturer has been committed for many years to safeguarding the environment through the constant improvement of its production processes and manufacturing products that are increasingly "eco-compatible". To grant customers the best possible service in terms of respecting environmental laws and in response to European Directive 2000/53/EC governing vehicles at the end of their life, the manufacturer is offering its customers the chance to hand over their vehicle at the end of its life without incurring any additional costs. The European Directive sets out that when the vehicle is handed over, the last keeper or owner should not incur any expenses as a result of it having a zero or negative market value.
To hand your vehicle over at the end of its life without extra cost, contact one of our dealerships if you are purchasing another vehicle or a collection and scrapping centre authorised by the Manufacturer. These centres have been carefully chosen to offer high quality service for the collection, treatment and recycling of vehicles at their end of life, respecting the surrounding environment.
Similarly, to meet its obligations under European Directive 2006/66/EC on batteries, the Manufacturer requires you to comply with the national regulations on handling both low-voltage (12 V and 48 V) and high-voltage lithium ion batteries at all times.
This includes consigning vehicles complete with their batteries to one of the collection and demolition centers authorized by the Manufacturer to handle such batteries, and not disposing of them improperly, which could lead to personal injuries and/or harm to the environment.
You can find further information on these collection and scrapping centers either from a dealer or a qualified workshop or by calling the number in the Service Booklet or by consulting the websites of the various the Manufacturer brands.

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit www.opel.com for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Introduction

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.

You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on brand website.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as thevehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as your driving behavior, your location or the route you travel, or on your usage behavior.

Operating data in the vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Emergency Call Data Recording and Privacy

Data processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of regulation 2016/679.
The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number. The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode. The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.
If you want to claim your abovementioned rights please contact us per email at privacyrights@mpsa.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

Technical data of the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.
- Cyber-security events (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as accidents, collisions or activations of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance and repair activities

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read

along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary. The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system

Depending on its level of equipment, your vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside your vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. Intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of a Semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable). This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behaviour, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered.
Concerned data is greyed low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator pedal position), both sampled every seconds just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamping of the event are also recorded. Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read license plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from your vehicle near an approved repairer workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port. This can be done upon a request on your side for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning your vehicle. This system only aims to provide explanatory context of ADAS activations. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it ; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder (EDR) system

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, your vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of your ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, EDR system is a legal obligation inside Europe

Market, and in other countries bent to UN Regulation No 160 ; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyze the context of an accident involving your vehicle. Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialized at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple® CarPlay[REFILL ADBLUE])

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the

change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services - "Over-The-Air" connectivity

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems.
Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone).
The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided. Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorization, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system, or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the thirdparty services provided by the service provider in question.

Online services based on contractual agreements

Your vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber. During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requestor considered as vehicle’s owner to activate services on the vehicle.
For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions accepted. You can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with a Stellantis account.

Protecting measures against cyber attacks

Depending to the model, your vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view . This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.

When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abn ormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside your vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's in fra structures by "Over-The-Air" connectivity. Those log files are analyzed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronical components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles.
It also directly participates to the securitization of your vehicle's connectivity and allows the correct performance of online services activated on your vehicle . Ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing are described within the European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis (see below).

Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independtly of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where you are driving. It doesn't matter where you bought your vehicle or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. your exact location, the time of the accident, your vehicle's identification number and direction of travel). This information is only transmitted from your vehicle in the event of a serious accident ; it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage your situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures. Inside Europe, the 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.
The eCall system is only activated if your vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when you are simply driving your vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering your car's position or monitoring your driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This SERVICE is provided for 15 years after the vehicule is fisrtly put into circulation.
In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 (“OBFCM”), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance travelled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).
These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymized and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle’s data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.
As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions doesn’t not permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle). The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the “GSR V2 Regulations”, this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle’s settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle’s position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of your vehicle, it may be pos-

sible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association

(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)
This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th november 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020). It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by belgian authorities to collect and control this data.
This mileage is collected over-the-air by Stellantis if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism.
For more information, please refer to the Car-Pass privacy policy (https://www.car-pass.be/en/privacy-policy).

Data Use - Product Quality Improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by STELLANTIS AUTO SAS as a car maker, your Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the geolocation of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products.
Further information on this, and ways to exercise your Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles (“Privacy Policy”) applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help you understand better how we handle your information. In this document, you will find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy). If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how your data are processed, please send your request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com
This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.
It is also available at the following link: https://connected-vehicles-privacy.stellantis.com/

Event Data Recorders

(Depending on country of sale)
This vehicle is fitted with an accident data recording system, also called Event Data Recorder (EDR).
This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision.

In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, this system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- Any deployment of a restraint system (e.g. airbag, seat belt).
- The status of the seat belts of all the occupants (fastened/unfastened).
- The contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver.
- The speed of the vehicle.
- The status of some driving and manoeuvring aids systems.

The following are not recorded by the system:

- Data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event.
- Personal data on the driver and any other occupants.
- The geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the system requires the following:

- Access to the interior of the vehicle or to the system.

And

- Special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer BOSCH (www.BoschCDRTool.com).

Aside from the vehicle Manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as immobilizer. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Manufacturer vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Manufacturer system containing personal information.

APPENDIX

Child Restraint Installation Locations

Rules:

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1 and R2.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.

Key



Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.





Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning lamp.





Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning lamp.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.



Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.



Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

Presence of a Top Tether anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of an universal ISOFIX child seat.



"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.



"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers.**
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.



Booster child seat:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.



ISOFIX **"carrycot"** type child seat:



- **L1**: left-hand facing.
- **L2**: right-hand facing.

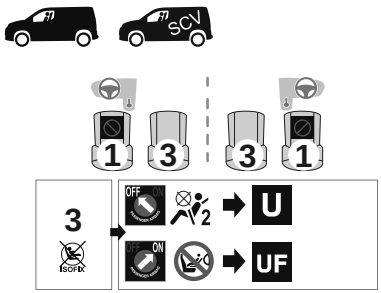


Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

LCV with 2 Front Seats



a. Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

b. Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

c. To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag MUST be deactivated "OFF".

d. Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated "ON".

e. For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

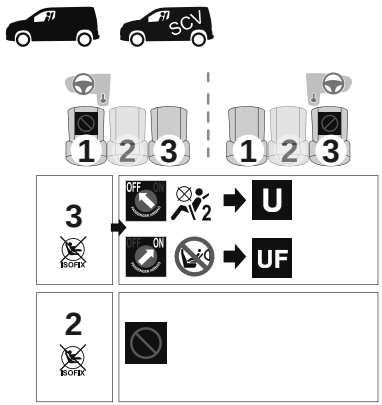
f. For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) in groups 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

g. Position incompatible with a child seat when the Cargo Box elements are installed.

h. Position incompatible with a child seat if the seat is an individual seat with storage box.

	Seat numbers		
	Front seats (b)		
	1	3	
		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e)(g)(h)**	no
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f)(g)(h)**	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no	
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no	
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no	
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	
"**Booster**" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no	

LCV with Bench Seat



a. Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

b. Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

c. To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag MUST be deactivated "OFF".

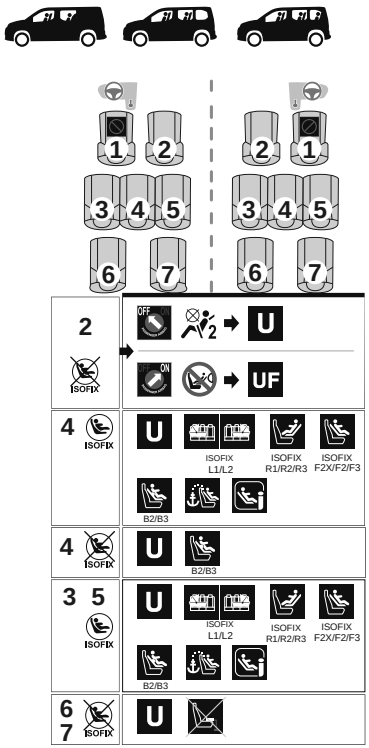
d. Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated "ON".

e. For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

f. For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) in groups 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

	Seat numbers			
	Front seats (b)			
	1	2	3	
			Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no		yes **(e)**	no
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no		yes **(f)**	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no		no	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no		no	
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no		no	
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no		no	
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no		no	
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no		no	
"**Booster**" child seat (B2 / B3)	no		no	

MPV



a. Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

b. Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

c. To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag MUST be deactivated "OFF".

d. Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated "ON".

e. For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

f. For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) in groups 1, 2 or 3 or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

g. With the passenger seat which cannot be placed in the folded position, adjust the backrest angle to 0°.

For more information on the Front seats and, in particular, the folded position for the backrest, refer to the corresponding section.

h. For the fixed front passenger seat : a child seat cannot be installed.

i. To install a child seat on a rear seat, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.

j. To install a child seat on a rear seat, move the seats in front of it forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.

k. On the 7-seater version, fold down the backrests in row 2 .

l. A child seat with a support leg cannot be installed.

m. On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with ISOFIX mountings.

n. The installation of a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.

o. For the central and lateral rear seat behind the front passenger, adjust the front passenger seat without height adjuster to the fully back position.

p. On some versions, the central seat is not equipped with top tether mountings.

q. Adjust the front seat to its maximum height.

	Seat numbers						
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) (i) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3
	1	2		3	4	5	6	7
		Deactivated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)					
Position compatible with an **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e)** **(g)**/no **(h)**	no	yes **(j)**			yes **(i)** **(j)** **(k)** **(l)**	
Position compatible with an **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f)** **(g)**/no **(h)**		yes **(j)**			yes **(i)** **(j)** **(k)** **(l)**	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes **(q)**	yes **(q)**/ no **(m)**	yes **(q)**	no	
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes **(q)**	yes **(q)**/ no **(m)**	yes **(q)**	no	
Position equipped with a **TOP TETHER** hook	no	no		yes	yes/no **(p)**	yes	no	

	Seat numbers						
	Front seats (b)			Rear seats (b) (i) row 2			Rear seats (b) row 3	
	1	2		3	4	5	6	7
		Deacti-vated "OFF" (c)	Activated "ON" (d)					
"Carrycot" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		yes **(n)**	yes **(n)**/ no **(m)**	yes **(n)**	no	
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no		R3 **(o)**	R3 **(m)** **(o)**	R3 **(o)**	no	
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no		F3	F3 **(m)**	F3	no	
"**Booster**" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	no		B3	B3 **(m)**	B3	no	

INDEX

Numerics

12V Power Outlets 72

A

AC On-Off Control 115
Access to engine compartment . . 255
Active Emergency Braking 150
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) . . 184
AdBlue® 252
AdBlue® tank 306
Adding Coolant Fluid 260
Adding Washer Fluid 259
Air Conditioner Maintenance 267
Air Fan Speed Control 119
Air intake 266
Air vents 119
Airbag System 45
Allowed tire and rim sizes 277
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) . . . 199
Anti-theft Alarm System 15
Anti-theft locking system 14
Antifreeze coolant 255
Applications 130
Ashtrays 77
Assist And SOS 225
Assistance Call 228
Audio Settings 127
Automatic AC Control 117
Automatic Emergency Call (eCall) 228
Automatic Lighting 62
Automatic Park Assist 210
Automatic Transmission 151

B

Battery 102
BEV 102
BEV Engine (checking levels) . . . 257
Blue warning and indicator lights . 112
Bodywork-Exterior Care 280
Brake and clutch fluids 255
Brake assist 149
Brake Assist (BA) 196
Brake fluid 251
Brakes 147
Bulb Replacement 268

C

Catalytic converter 157
Central Locking System 10
Charging 158
Charging another vehicle 241
Checking Brake Fluid 261
Checking Fluids Level 250
Checking Oil Level 257
Child restraint installation locations 56
Child restraints 50
Child surveillance mirror 33
Choosing the Media 126
Choosing the Radio Frequency . . 126
Cigarette lighter 77
Climate Controls 115
Connectivity 133
Courtesy Lights 68
Cruise control 182
Cupholders 70
Curtain Airbags 47
Customer Information 1, 310
Customization 126

D

Daytime Running Lights 67
Decals 281
Declaration of Conformity 310
Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors . . . 122
Diesel Engine (checking levels) . . 257
Disconnecting - Connecting Battery 242
Disposal Prescriptions 314
Doors 18
Drive Selector (Electric) 154
Driver Attention Warning by Front View Camera 216

Driver Attention Warning by timer . 216
Driver Drowsiness and Distraction with Driver Monitoring Camera 216
Driver's Attention Assistance System 215
Driving Mode Selector 156
Driving Modes 156
Driving Tips 175

E

Electronic key system 10
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control system (TCS) 196
Emergency Call (eCall) 225
Emergency Signals 66
End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal 249
Engine Compartment 255
Engine coolant 251
Engine exhaust 156
Engine Identification 286
Engine oil 251, 306
Engine washing 263
Event Data Recorders 322
Exhaust filter 157
Exterior Lights 62

F

Fixed speed limiter 182
Fluid Capacities 306
Fluids and lubricants 304
Fog Lights 67
Foglights 272
Folding Front Seats 37
Folding Rear Seats 40
Front Airbag system 46
Front Armrest 39
Front Fog Lights 67
Front Lights (replacement) 268
Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation 48
Front Seat Position 35
Front storage 71
Fuel 157
Fuel consumption - CO_2-Emissions 313
Fuel level gauge 100
Fuel tank 306
Fuels Compatibility 157
Fuses 268

G

Glove Compartment 70
Green warning and indicator lights 111
Guide Me Home 67

H

Halogen headlights (replacement) 268
Hazard Warning Lights 225
Head Restraints Position 34
Heated mirrors 29
Heated Seats 37
Heated steering wheel 57
Heated windshield 27
High beam 66
High Gloss Paint 281
High-voltage battery charge status 100
Hill Descent Control (HDC) 218
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 219
Horn 57
How To Use This Manual 5

I

i-Size child restraint system 54
Identification Plate 285
Ignition Switch 57
Immobilizer 17
In Case Of Emergency 1, 225
Inductive charging 75
Infotainment System 1, 123
Inside Rearview Mirror 30
Instrument Cluster 98
Integrated Turn Signal Side Repeaters (replacement) 274
Interior Care 281
Interior Features 70
Interior lights (replacement) 274
Introduction 5
Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care . . 249
Isofix Anchorage Connectors 53

J

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 229
Jump Starting 239

K

Key with foldaway key section 10

L

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) . . 201
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 203
Lateral Airbags 47
LED headlights 272
Light assembly in the body (replacement) 272
Lighting Controls 62
Link to Company App and Website . . 5
Load compartment 77

M

Maintenance And Vehicle Care 1, 249
Manual Emergency Call 227
Manual Front Seats 36
Manual transmission 151
Matrix-LED headlights 63
Maximum AC On-Off Control 117
Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control 118
Memorizing a Radio Station 127
Menu 123
Mirrors 28
Multimedia Pro Type 1 128
Multimedia Settings 139
Multimedia Type 2 139

N

Navigation 131
Number plate light (replacement) . 275

O

Odometer 100
Orange warning and indicator lights 105
Overhead console 74

P

Parking Brake 147
Parking Lights 68
Passenger side camera 200
Periodic Checks 250
Petrol Engine (checking levels) . . 257
Phone 138, 140
Power Button 57
Power Meter 100
Power Windows 26
Profiles 124
Propulsion Type 7

Q

Quick-Release Battery Clamp . . . 243

R

Radio 126
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 323
Radio Remote Control Function 9
Range 102
Range Display 102
REACH 314
Reading Lights 69
Rear doors 23
Rear Lights (replacement) 272
Rear Seat Position 39
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 214
Rear window 23
Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control 118
Rear window wiper and washer . . . 61
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts 252
Recommended ISOFIX child seats 55
Red warning and indicator lights . 103
Refill AdBlue® (Exhaust Emission Fluid) 264
Refuelling In Emergency 243
Regenerative braking 150
Replacement keys 14
Reverse Lights 67

S

Safety Messages 6
Scheduled Servicing 250
Screen Mirroring 135
Screenwash, rear 61

Seat belt pretensioners 44
Seat Belts Maintenance 281
Seatback Storage 72
Seats 35
Selecting a Radio Station 126
Service Information 249
Side Blind Spot Alert (SBSA) 199
Sliding Door Operation 19
Smartphone Station 140
Spare Wheel 230
Speed limiter 180
Speedometer 100
Starting And Stopping The Engine 142
Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery 240
Steering Wheel 56
Steering Wheel Adjustment 56
Steering Wheel Controls 130, 140
Stop & Start (ICE) 144
Sun visors 28
SunRoof 69
Surround Vision 207
Symbols Keys 6

T

Tailgate Operation 22
Temperature Control 119
Tightening Torques 307
Tire Chains 278
Tire Information Label 286
Tire Markings - Designations 275
Tire pressure 276
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 222
Tire Repair Kit 235
Tire Repair Procedure 236
Tire Repair Toolkit 235
Tire Safety Information 275
Tires and Wheels 275
Towing 245
Towing another vehicle 247
Towing the vehicle 245
Traffic Sign Assist (TSA) 220
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) . . 220
Trailer Towing 174
Tread depth 277
Trip computer 101
Turn Signals 66

U

USB ports 135
USB Ports 73

V

Vehicle Battery 261
Vehicle Data 286
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 314
Vehicle Identfication Number (VIN) 285
Vehicle Loading 172
Vehicle Maintenance 263
Vehicle Storage 279
Vehicle to Load (V2L) 171
Very Cold Climate Covers 249
Voice Commands 131, 140

W

Warning lights, gauges and indicators 103
Warning triangle 228
Wheel Changing Toolkit 229
Wheel Covers 277
Wheel Installation 234
Wheel Removal 232
Widgets 99
Windows 25
Windshield 27
Windshield Washer 60
Winter tires 276
Wiper Blade Replacement 263



QUARTZ ENGINE OIL | MOPAR

Driving innovation for tomorrow.

For over 50 years, **TotalEnergies and Stellantis have shared a common vision of performance, innovation, and mobility for the future.**

This long-standing partnership is built on close technical collaboration, from product design to after-sales service across official networks. By combining their expertise, the two companies have developed cutting-edge lubrication technologies tailored to the evolving needs of Opel powertrains.

The co-branded **Quartz Mopar** and **Quartz EV3R Mopar** ranges reflect this shared expertise. Specifically designed and **approved by Opel**, they include **high-performance engine oils** covering every Opel powertrain. Each formulation helps keep engines clean, reduce wear, and support fuel efficiency, ensuring smooth operation mile after mile, even under the most demanding conditions.

We're taking innovation further with **Quartz EV3R Mopar,** which introduces the **3R approach (Reduce, Reuse, Regenerate)** using regenerated base oils and a recyclable bottle, while delivering the same performance as standard Quartz oils, with a lower impact compared to our conventional products.

Your authorized Opel repairer will recommend the right oil for your model and service schedule. Available and **recommended within Opel authorized after-sales networks,** Quartz Mopar offers confidence, durability, and proven technology backed by decades of partnership.

OPEL recommends TotalEnergies

OPEL | TotalEnergies

OFFICIAL PARTNERS



www.opel.com

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: August 2026, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

OCOMBEO2608en-1



